### The Asian Classics Institute

\_\_\_\_\_

Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course I Teachings of the Future Buddha The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya



Arya Asanga



### The Asian Classics Institute



### Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

#### Course Syllabus

Class One: About the Text

#### **Topics Covered**

On the Name of the Text The Prediction of Arya Asanga How Arya Asanga was Granted the Text The Five Books of Maitreya The Progression of the Five Books The Six Questions of the King How High Was the Arya?

#### Sources

A Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series (Uttara Tantra, or Gyu Lama), ACIP digital text T4024, spoken by Lord Maitreya to Arya Asanga, c. 350 AD Sanskrit and Tibetan versions

A Treatise upon the "Commentary on the Latter Part," (Gyu La-tik) ACIP digital text S5434, by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432)

*The Jewel of the Sutras (Sutralamkara),* spoken by Lord Maitreya to Arya Asanga, c. 350 AD

Stories of the Lives of the Lamas of the Lineage of the Steps of the Path, by Yongdzin Yeshe Gyeltsen (1713-1793), tutor to His Holiness the Eighth Dalai Lama

The Root Tantra of Gentle Voice (Manjushri Mula Tantra),

by Manjushri

*The Great History of Buddhism,* by Buton Rinchen Drup (1290-1364)

A History of Buddhism, by the venered Taranatha (1575-1634)

Class Two: The Seven Diamond-Like Visions

#### **Topics Covered**

The Translator Pays Respect
The Seven Diamond-Like Visions
The Two Forms of Each Vision
Why They Are Like a Diamond
On the Number of the Seven
On the Order of the Seven

#### Sources

Lord Maitreya's Latter Part

Gyaltsab Je's Treatise

A Complete Explanation of the "Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series," by Arya Asanga (c. 350 AD)
Sanskrit and Tibetan versions

Class Three: Becoming a Shelter for the World

#### **Topics Covered**

The Student the Book was Meant For The Meaning of the Jewel Taking Shelter in the Buddha The Qualities of the Coming Buddha Gyaltsab Je on the Qualities

#### Sources

Gyaltsab Je's Treatise

Lord Maitreya's Commentary on the Latter Part

The Sutra Requested by the Householder Ugra ACIP digital text K0063, by Lord Buddha (500 BC)

The Cloud of Offerings, which Pleases the Wise, and Illuminates the True Thought of the Treatise known as the "Ornament of Realizations": a Combined Word Commentary and Dialectical Analysis,
ACIP digital text S0195, a textbook for Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery by Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748)

Class Four: The Sun of the Holy Dharma

#### **Topics Covered**

Neither Is nor Isn't The Way it All Begins Curing the Sickness Gaining the Dharma Jewel

#### Sources

Lord Maitreya's Commentary on the Latter Part

Gyaltsab Je's *Treatise* 

Choney Lama's Cloud of Offerings

Class Five: Death and Realized Beings

#### **Topics Covered**

How Free is a Realized Being?
The Seven Lifetimes
Realized Beings and the Truth of Suffering
To the Body of Illusion
Death and the Way of Mantra

The Realized Taking Birth Again How Much Trouble You Avoid by Seeing Emptiness

#### Sources

Lord Maitreya's Commentary on the Latter Part

Gyaltsab Je's *Treatise* 

An Overview of the Twenty Practitioners, ACIP digital text S0012, a textbook for Sera Mey Monastery by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568)

A Jewel of the Essence of Fine Explanation, being an Overview of the Perfection of Wisdom, ACIP digital text S0009, a textbook for Sera Mey Monastery by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568)

The String of Golden Beads of Fine Explanation, a Necklace for the Wise: an Analysis of "The Jewel of Realizations" Composed in the Form of Notes to a Teaching by the Good and Glorious Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen, ACIP digital text S6815, a textbook for Sera Jey Monastery by Sera Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen (1469-1546)

Choney Lama's Cloud of Offerings

The Revelation of Vital Points of All the Secrets: a Book on the Stages of the Path in the Practice of the Lord over the Secret World of all the Victors, the Great Keeper of the Diamond (Vajradhara), ACIP digital text S5281, by Je Tsongkapa Lobsang Drakpa (1357-1419)

The Lamp that Illuminates, Totally, the Teaching on the Five Steps: a Book of Advices on the King of All Secret Teachings, the Glorious Secret Collection (Guhya Samaja), ACIP digital text S5302, by Je Tsongkapa Lobsang Drakpa (1357-1419)

Fine Explanation, a String of Golden Beads: an Extensive Explanation of "The Jewel of Realizations, a Classical Commentary of Instruction for the Perfection of Wisdom," along with Its Own Commentary,

ACIP digital text S5412, by Je Tsongkapa Lobsang Drakpa (1357-1419)

A String of White Lotuses of Fine Explanation: a Dialectical Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, ACIP digital text S0001, a textbook for Sera Mey Monastery by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568)

A Lovely String of Jewels, a Necklace for the Wise: a Dialectical Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, a textbook for the Gomang College of Drepung Monastery by Master Jamyang Shepay Dorje (1648-1721)

Excellent Explanation, a Sea of Sport for Those Fortunate Lords of the Serpentines, Written in Clarification of Difficult Points found in the Two Treatises upon the "Ornament of Realizations" and its Commentary ACIP digital text 6814, by a textbook for Sera Jey Monastery by Sera Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen (1469-1546)

Drops of Deathless Nectar that Clear Away the Heat of Pain:
Notes to a Teaching on the "Path of Ease"
Granted by the Precious Tutor, Yeshe Gyeltsen, and
Recorded by that Good and Glorious One,
the Venerable Konchok Tenpay Drunme,
ACIP digital text S0923, spoken by
Yongdzin Yeshe Gyeltsen (1713-1793),
Tutor to His Holiness the Dalai Lama,
and recorded by Master Gungtang Konchok Tenpay Drunme (1762-1823)

Class Six: Nine Images for the Concealed Buddha

#### **Topics Covered**

An Introduction to the Nine Images
The Ugly Lotus
The Bee with Honey
The Essence within a Piece of Grain
The Gold Coin Dropped in a Cesspool
The Treasure Buried in a Poor Man's Hut
The Sprout within a Small Fruit
The Statue of the Victor within a Ragged Cloth
The World Emperor in the Womb of a Poor Woman

The Golden Statue covered with Mud

#### Sources

Lord Maitreya's Commentary on the Latter Part

Gyaltsab Je's Treatise

Class Seven: Buddha-Nature is Emptiness

#### **Topics Covered**

The Sources
A Definitive Explanation of Buddha-Nature
Some Debates about Buddha-Nature
The Five Wisdoms and the Five Heaps

#### Sources

Choney Lama's Cloud of Offerings

The Ornament of Realizations (Abhisamaya Alamkara, Nguntok Gyen), ACIP digital text T3786, spoken by Lord Maitreya to Arya Asanga (c. 350 AD)

The Middle-Length Mother Sutra, as quoted in:
The Lord of Lords among Wish-Giving Gems:
a Detailed Commentary to both the
Commentary and Subcommentary upon the
Classical Treatise known as "The Ornament of Realizations,"
ACIP digital text S0999, by the Omniscient Chunjor Pelsang (c. 1490)

A Commentary upon "The Ornament of Realizations," a Classical Commentary of Advices upon the Perfection of Wisdom, ACIP digital text T3793, by Master Haribhadra (9<sup>th</sup> Century)

Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye's Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom

A Selection of Works on the Practice of the Holy Gentle Voice (Manjushri)
ACIP digital text S1002,
by Lama Umapa Drupchen Pawo Dorje (fl. 1390)

#### Class Eight: Other Schools on Buddha-Nature

#### **Topics Covered**

Positions of the Ancient Indian Schools
Some Debates on the Indian Schools
Teachings on the Idea of "Other-Emptiness" (Shentong)
Some Practical Meditations of the "Other-Emptiness" School
Discussions on Buddha-Nature from His Holiness the Third Karmapa
Gyaltsab Je's Critique of Other-Emptiness

#### Sources

Choney Lama's Cloud of Offerings

A String of Precious Drops of the Nectar of Oral Transmission: a Compilation of Various Questions and Answers on the Positions of the Four Classical Schools of Philosophy, ACIP digital text S0918, by Gungtang Konchok Tenpay Dargye (1762-1823)

The Divisions of Vowed Morality (Vinaya Vibhanga) ACIP digital text K0003

Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye's Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom

The Great Dictionary of Tibet ACIP digital text R0002 (modern)

Immaculate Rays of Light from the Diamond Moon, an Instruction on the View of Other-Emptiness according to the Great Followers of the Middle Way, by Jamgon Kongtrul Lodru Taye, also known as Jamgon Kongtrul Yonten Gyatso (1813-1899)

An Illumination of the Deep State, a Book which Unravels, in Very Few Words, the Meaning of "The Deep Inner State," Itself the Very Essence of the Ocean of Secret Texts from the Secret Group of Unsurpassed Deep Practice, by Jamgon Kongtrul

*The Deep Inner State,* by His Holiness the Third Karmapa, Rangjung Dorje (1284-1339)

Gyaltsab Je's *Treatise* 

Class Nine: In the End, All Paths are One

#### **Topics Covered**

About the Names "Vehicle," "Listener," and "Self-Made Buddha"
Kinds of Self-Made Buddhas
The Three Tracks and the Three Scopes
Who Holds the Three Tracks
The Three Degrees of Selflessness
In the End, the Ways are Three
In the End, the Ways are One
Where the Higher Path is Entered
Is There a Beginning or an End to Suffering?
How the Buddhas Awaken Them

#### Sources

The Light of Fine Explanation: a Lamp that Illuminates Even Further the True Thought of the "Great Book on the Secret Word," which is Itself a Commentary upon the True Thought of the Four Groups of Secret Teachings, ACIP digital text S0215, by Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748)

Following a Tradition of Eloquence: a Word-by-Word Commentary to "Entering the Middle Way," ACIP digital text S0981, by Chuje Ngawang Pelden (1806-?)

Je Tsongkapa's String of Golden Beads

The Great Book on the Steps of the Teaching (Tenrim Chenmo), ACIP digital text S0070, by Geshe Drolungpa Lodru Jungne (c. 1100)

The Essence of an Ocean of Fine Explanations

on Higher Knowledge: a Commentary upon the "Compendium of Higher Knowledge," ACIP digital text S5435, by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432)

Autocommentary to "The Treasure House of Higher Knowledge" (Abhidharmakosha Bhashya),
ACIP digital text 4090,
by Master Vasubandhu (c. 350 AD)

The Party to Open Up Excellent Things: an Explanation of "The Lamp for the Path to Enlightenment," ACIP digital text S5941, by the First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyeltsen (1565-1662)

Gyaltsab Je's Treatise

A Presentation on the Schools of Philosophy, ACIP digital text S0056, by Sera Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen (1469-1546)

Choney Lama's Cloud of Offerings

Lord Maitreya's Commentary to the Latter Part

Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye's Overview of the Perfection of Wisdom

Class Ten: The Twelve Deeds of the Buddha

#### **Topics Covered**

Introduction to the Twelve Deeds
Some Detail on the Twelve Deeds, and the Person who Performs Them
Who Was He Before?
Who Performs the Deeds?
The Tantric View
Celebrating the Deeds
The Whole Story
Declaring Yourself to the World

#### Sources

Gyaltsab Je's *Treatise* 

Lord Maitreya's Commentary on the Latter Part

A Lamp that Illuminates, Totally, the Meaning of the Great Mother
ACIP digital text S0982,
by Chuje Ngawang Pelden (b. 1806)

Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye's *Dialectical Analysis* of the Perfection of Wisdom

Je Tsongkapa's String of Golden Beads

The Lovely Jewel for the Mountain Peak of the Teachings of the Able One, ACIP digital text S0063, by the Third Changkya Rinpoche, Rolpay Dorje (1717-1786)

An Explanation of the Traditional Religious Holidays, ACIP digital text S0108, by the Second Changkya Rinpoche, Ngawang Lobsang Chunden (1642-1714)

The String of Pearls, a Necklace for Master Scholars, ACIP digital text S6848, by Sera Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen (1469-1546)

The Sutra of Cosmic Play (Lalita Vistara Sutra, Gyacher Rolpay Do), ACIP digital text K0095, by Lord Buddha (500 BC)

Arya Asanga's Complete Explanation

The Tibetan Catalog to the Derge Edition of the Tengyur, ACIP digital text TD4569, by Shuchen Tsultrim Rinchen (fl. 1730)

Catalog to the Tibetan Collection of the Russian Academy of Sciences, St Petersburg, ACIP digital text R0032, by the St Petersburg Catalog Project (modern)

## The Asian Classics Institute

### Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Reading One: About the Text

On the Name of the Text

## व न्यःक्रेवःम् क्रूनःस्यायदे नसूवः नर्देश महायानो रतन्त्रशास्त्र।

These are the names of the text we will study for this course, the Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series, in Tibetan and Sanskrit. They are explained as follows by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432), the famed disciple of Je Tsongkapa who became the first holder of his throne after the Master passed from this world. All the selections by Gyaltsab Je found in the readings for the course are taken from his Treatise upon the Commentary on the Latter Part.

मि. र. र.री शस्त्रे, वश्चारात्रे, यूरे. र.री. अक्ष्यायतर त्या तायात्री त्यात्रेयात्रे व्याप्त स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर् षुः स्वेन्न्यर्रम् प्रत्यात्र्वात्र्यं क्षेत्र्यं स्वेन्

Gyaltsab Je writes:

Now we will translate the name of the text, and then explain the name. Here is the first.

The title, in Sanskrit, is Mahayana Uttara Tantra Shastra [which in Tibetan is Tekpa Chenpo Gyu Lamay Tenchu, and in English "Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series, in the Greater Way."]. Maha, or chenpo in Tibetan, means "great," and yana (tekpa in Tibetan) means "vehicle" or "capacity." Anuttara or uttara (which is lama in Tibetan) means "higher," or "ultimate." Tantra (gyu in Tibetan) means "stream" or "series" or "secret book." Shastra (or tenchu in Tibetan) is "commentary."

क्षेत्रायात्री व यातर्वेत्रायम्तिन्यराष्ट्रीत्याक्षुतेव यात्रा वर्वेरायम्तिन्यराष्ट्रायाव्यव्यास्त्रेवे व पर्दा १२ हे ५ दि मुन् पर्दे हो हो ५ त्या देशे अप्यान हो अप्यान के स्वाप के स्वाप के स्वाप के स्वाप के स्वाप के

### प्रशक्ति मुर्चे

Here is the second. "Vehicle" here can be the causal vehicle, in the sense of something that allows you to travel someplace. It can also refer to the resulting vehicle, in the sense here of someplace you want to travel to. We call this vehicle a "great" vehicle in that it possesses seven different qualities of greatness: qualities such as being "great" in the scope of its focus. It is great in its focus because it focuses upon an incredibly vast collection of scripture.

[The seven ways in which the way is "great" are presented in the *Jewel of the Sutras*, also spoken by Lord Maitreya:

We speak of it certainly as the "greater" way Because it possesses seven kinds of greatness: Its scope is something which is great, And just so it is great in the two accomplishments. It is great in the wisdom, in the effort undertaken, In the skillful means that it employs, In the greatness of pure attainment, And in the greatness of enlightened deeds.

The "scope" is said to be great in that the greater way focuses upon vast texts such as the *Perfection of Wisdom in 100,000 Lines*. It is great as well in the two accomplishments: which refers to fulfilling the needs both of oneself and of others. It is great in wisdom because in this way one realizes the two different versions of the lack of a self.

The effort undertaken in this way is great because one embarks upon difficult work which requires three "countless" eons to complete. The skillful means employed are great both because one remains in the cycle of suffering due to the great power of ones compassion, and also because one employs wisdom to make oneself free of negative thoughts. Ones attainments are great in that one attains the ten powers of an enlightened being and such.

Finally, the enlightened deeds in this way are great in that one performs the twelve deeds of a fully enlightened being.]

The "stream" here conveys a sense of going on in a continuum; that is, this is teaching which indicates to us what we can use to purify our mind, filled as it is with impurities. Furthermore, the word "ultimate" is meant in the sense of "latter." Thus we can say that the words so far describe the "latter part of the teaching, on the greater way."

The word "commentary," or *shastra* in Sanskrit, then indicates a treatise which explains the real idea behind this teaching. The Sanskrit root *shas* can mean "to fix," or "to repair," whereas *tra* can signify "to protect." The Tibetan word here for "commentary" then, *tenchu* [which is literally a combination of two words meaning "to show" and "to repair"] is a compound meant to convey these two senses of the Sanskrit.

To summarize, we can say that this book helps us "fix" the great enemy within us—our negative thoughts—and serves to "protect" us from the terrors of the three lower realms, and of every form of suffering life in general.

#### The Prediction of Arya Asanga

There is a famous book by Yongdzin Yeshe Gyeltsen (1713-1793), the tutor of His Holiness the Eighth Dalai Lama, called *Stories of the Lives of the Lamas of the Lineage of the Steps of the Path*. In this text we find the famous prediction of Arya Asanga's coming into the world, as quoted in *Root Tantra of Gentle Voice*:

|८वि:ग्रु:८४:वर्शवंगाःतः| |व्यवि:रम्:यक्कुःव्यव:यवाः |र्व्यव्यव:येर्ड्य:ग्रुवे:रमोःश्चेंटःवे। |प रापर्ड्य:रेर्ड्य:वेर्ट्य:यःय या

As the Root Tantra of the Glorious Gentle One states,

Nine hundred years after the time
That I pass into my final nirvana,
There will come a monk
By the name of "Cannot Be Blocked" [A-sanga].
He will be a master of the meaning
Of that particular commentary,
And he will, in many different ways,
Distinguish between the literal
And figurative meanings of the sutras.
He will be a great being
Who shows the world reasoning,
And he will open the ways
Of the major scriptures.

नियासे सम्मुयस्यो।
नियासे सम्मुयस्यो।
नियासे सम्मुयस्यो।
नियासे सम्मुयस्य स्थान्त्रे स्थान्य स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्ये स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्रे स्थान्त्रे स्थान्

The way in which he masters reasoning Will be through the one we call The "Lady Messenger of Sala," And by the power of her secret words His mind [lo] will become excellent [sang]. In an effort to help the teachings Survive in the world, he will write Works on the essence of the sutras, And summaries as well. He will live for a hundred and fifty years, And when his body is finished He will pass on to the Land of the Gods.

#### How Arya Asanga was Granted the Text

The following brief history of how Arya Asanga was granted the text of the Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series is from the Great History of Buddhism by the omniscient Buton Rinpoche (1290-1364).

The older brother, Asanga, said to himself: "I will go and do practices to reach Maitreya, so that afterwards I can work to spread the teachings." And so he went to a cave in the mountains of Jakang, and did his practices for three years, and didn't see the slightest sign that his work was having any result at all. He got discouraged, and left the cave.

Outside he saw an old woman who was fashioning needles by rubbing away at a block of iron with a wisp of cotton. Asanga said to her: "How could you ever make a needle that way?" And she replied:

There is nothing that a person Of courage cannot achieve

If they really apply themselves. It may be something hard to do, But if you persist, and never give up, You can even turn mountains to dust.

र्थातु 'न्रान्त्युर्ग्यसुन्याने कुंचे याण्येयाण्यात् । वार्स्यान्या वार्स्यान्या वार्स्यान्या वार्स्यान्या वार्

And so Asanga returned to his practice, but after sixth year he left the cave again, and then once more in the ninth year. The first time he saw how water dripping slowly on a great boulder of rock had worn it down; the second time he saw how another boulder had been worn down by the wings of birds that touched it only occasionally.

र्ज्ञान्तुः हैशःसुःनसुन्याण्यादःस्रह्मन्याः दाहेत्यः त्यम्भुश्चेष्ट्रोष्ट्रात्यस्थित्याः विक्रास्त्रीत्रात्त्यस्यः विक्रास्त्रात्त्र्यः विक्रास्त्रात्त्रः विक्रास्त्रात्त्र्यः विक्रास्त्रात्त्र्यः विक्रास्त्रात्त्रः विक्रास्त्रात्त्र्यः विक्रास्त्रात्त्र्यः विक्रास्त्रात्त्र्यः विक्रास्त्रत्त्र्यः विक्रास्त्र

He went back again, but by the twelfth year he had still not received the slightest hint of any vision. Again he lost his courage, and left the cave. He came across a female dog; the lower part of her body had been eaten away by maggots that were now starting on the upper part, tormenting her. And then a high form of compassion was born in his heart.

हे... हो। ग्रॅट ब्रिस्का ड्र्य में ब्रेश वी. यम् होया हो अस्त क्षेत्र विस्त क्षेत्र विस्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र वी. व्या यथा ये. वर्ष विस्ति विस्ति क्षेत्र विद्या विद्या विद्या विद्या विष्य विद्या विद्या विद्या विद्या विद्या विद्या

It seemed to Asanga that, if he removed the maggots from the dog's body, then the maggots would die. But if he didn't remove them, then the dog would die. And so he decided to cut a piece of flesh from his own body, and put the maggots there. He went to into a nearby town, by the name of Achenta, and borrowed a golden razor by putting up his staff as collateral.

मि: भेर्ने प्रकालका वित्तरहर त्या प्रकास क्षेत्र क्

Asanga sliced the flesh from his body, and went to pick up the maggots in his fingers but stopped—realizing that he might crush them. He determined to move them by lifting them up on his tongue, and so leaned over, closing his eyes as he did. Then suddenly the dog was gone, and before him stood the Lord, Maitreya, blazing in light. Asanga cried out:

विर्ट्टिन्यः चर्चेष्यं स्ट्रेन्यः स्ट्रिन्यः विर्ट्टिन्यः स्ट्रिन्यः स्ट्रिन

Alas, one and only Father, Savior who protects me; I tried to reach you thousands of times, But all my efforts were fruitless.

There I sat tormented in heat, And you with a mass of seas, Clouds full of comforting rain, Sent me none, left me to thirst.

। यायाग्रेट्रस्यायबटाग्रेर्स्ट्रा |श्राप्तंत्रम्याद्यस्यायद्या |श्राप्तंत्रम्याद्यस्यायद्या |श्रुप्ताक्त्रम्यायद्यस्यायद्या

"I tried," Asanga wailed, "I tried so hard—and you didn't grant me the slightest sign. You have so little compassion," he said bitterly. And the Lord replied,

The King of the Gods May send down the rain,

But if the seeds are not ready Then nothing will grow.

The Enlightened Ones May come to this world, But if people lack goodness Then they miss the sublime.

पश्चार्यात्वराणेन्द्रित्यराची श्रीयायश्चार्यात्वर्या प्रश्नित्यराची स्थायार्थित्यराची स्थाये स

"I was there with you," continued the Lord, "from the very beginning. But the obstacles in your own mind prevented you from seeing me. Now these obstacles have been cleared away, because you found great compassion in your heart, and so you can see me. If you really want to appreciate how true this is, I suggest that you lift me up on your shoulders and show me off to everyone." This Asanga did; he soon realized that no one could see Maitreya, and then he believed what the Lord had told him.

### ब्रिंद है त्वेंद माशुद न त्य

And then Maitreya said to him, "What was it that you wished from me, anyway?"

### विया केंद्र दर या भ्रात्य क्षा या विष्य स्था

"I seek to spread the teachings of the greater way," answered Asanga.

### द्वः क्रेंशः में श्रायायह्या विवा वासुद्रशास्या द्वारा खूद र् चेंद्रा हे ...

"Well then," Maitreya said, "take hold of my robes." And they travelled together to the Heaven of Bliss.

सक्र त्यक्ष ज्ञान्त त्या क्ष्य क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र त्यु स्ट्री देश क्षेत्र क्षेत्

Asanga stayed there for only the briefest moment of a day for the gods; it's said that, during this same time, 50 or even 53 human years passed. In early editions of the *Collection on the Levels*, there was a note which said that Asanga stayed for six months, learning from Maitreya. During his visit, the Lord taught him the Sutras on the Mother [the Perfection of Wisdom]; the Great Teaching on Yogic Practices; and a great number of sutras of the greater way in general.

ने न्या यो देव देव विकास के प्रति के प

Masters such as Sinha Bhadra say that Asanga begged the Lord to compose commentaries on the meaning of these works, and so the Lord wrote what we know as the Five Books of Maitreya.

#### The Five Books of Maitreya

#### Gyaltsab Je writes:

And so he went to the Heaven of Bliss, and he listened to the holy Dharma, and he grasped, totally, the true meaning of the entire body of the Buddha's teachings. And then for the sake of later generations that would appear on this earth he granted us a gift of this highest Dharma. The gift consists of the five great commentaries: what we call the two books of distinguishing; the two books which are jewels; and the *Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series, on the Greater Way*.

र्ने : चया द्वा स्थाया देश समाय स्थाया स्थाय स्

Now generally speaking, Lord Buddha taught two different methods of distinguishing between those parts of his—the Conqueror's—teachings which are to be taken as figurative and those which are to be taken as literal. These two methods are those stated in (1) the Sutra Requested by Infinite Wisdom and the King of Concentration Sutra; among others; and (2) the Sutra which Gives the Final Clarification of the Profound Meaning, the True Intent.

ग्रीश्च मीयान्तरास्त्री क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या मीया प्रत्या क्ष्या क्ष्या

The first set of works says that Lord Buddha was speaking literally when he taught that every single object which exists is devoid of existing by definition. These works say that He was speaking figuratively when he taught about the person, and the various parts of a person and so on, utilizing a wide variety of words and letters.

The latter group of sutras says that Lord Buddha taught that imaginary objects do not exist by definition, but that caused things—those which are therefore "under the power" of other things, and also totality—the true nature of the totality of all things, do exist by definition. They say that whenever Lord Buddha described all things comprehensively as not existing by definition, or else described all things comprehensively as existing by definition, He was thus speaking figuratively. Then later, when Lord Buddha clearly set forth a dividing line between some things existing by definition and other things not existing by definition, He was speaking—according to them—literally.

भर्ने अदे हेश शुष्त्वरश्वश्व विद्या मुत्रा मुत्र मुत्र

### येवायायमञ्जीत्वयायार्ने विष्ठेयायाद्वराचये रेत्रात्त्वतायायो स्वाप्तायायाया

Following the teachings of the former group of sutras, our protector, Nagarjuna, so perfectly initiated his particular system of distinguishing between what the Buddha stated in a figurative sense and what He stated in a literal sense. By so doing, Nagarjuna automatically established that the latter sutra was meant to be taken figuratively.

राल्तात्रम् त्रात्त्रम् स्वात्त्रम् स्वात्त्रम्

Master Asanga then initiated, primarily speaking, the system of the Consciousness-Only School, by following the teachings of the two works on distinguishing and the *Jewel of the Sutras of the Greater Way;* which is to say, he depended on the method of distinguishing between the figurative and the literal which is presented in the latter type of sutra. Master Asanga commented, in addition, upon the true intent of the scriptural collection of the lesser way.

#### The Progression of the Five Books

मृ्यास्त्राहेश ने ने त्याक्ष्या मृत्या क्ष्या क्ष्य

#### Gyaltsab Je writes:

Here is what is presented in the first of the five books of Maitreya: *Distinguishing between Things and the Nature of Things*. It first describes "things," in the sense of the things that act as the basis for this cycle of suffering life to occur. And these are "things" in the sense of anything where object and subject appear as two: where caused things, those under the control of other factors, could exist in truth.

The book then describes the "nature of things" as being that thing which, when you focus upon it

and accustom yourself to it, acts as a basis for attaining freedom from suffering: that is to say, emptiness, in the sense that object and subject are devoid of being "separate" things.

प्रस्ति हो। व्याप्त विद्याप्त स्थाप्त स्थाप्त

Here next is what is presented in the second book, called *Distinguishing between the Middle and the Extremes*. Starting from a description of things existing in truth, of the appearance of duality, it goes on to divide all objects into the three characteristics. It continues by setting forth a description of the original state of things, the path, and the result of the path, in both the shared and unique vehicles.

बिर्या स्त्रेत्र स्त्रेत् स्त

The third book, the *Jewel of the Sutras of the Greater Way*, does not deny the idea of things existing in truth, of duality. It starts off with a description of how one awakens the inner seed for the greater way. Then it sets forth the method by which bodhisattvas bring their realizations ever higher and higher, and also includes an expanded explanation of the means by which we attract and guide disciples.

यश्वरः याश्वरः ये दे द्वायीश्वर्या प्राप्तः विद्यान्य । दे या विद्यान्य विद्यान्य विद्यान्य विद्यान्य विद्यान्य वश्वरः विद्यान्य विद्यान्य

These first three treatises go no further than presenting a kind of ultimate reality which would be comfortable for the minds of selected disciples. They never clearly set forth ultimate reality in the form of saying that every object in the universe is devoid of any nature of its own.

# द्रास्त्र्वायाम् । प्रत्याक्षेत्राच्याकष्ठेत्राच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याकष्याकष्ठेत्रच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच्याच्याच्याच्याकष्ठेत्रच

The Master [Asanga] initiated, perfectly, the way of the Consciousness-Only school by composing the *Collection of Five Works on the Levels*, the two compendiums, and other works. He did so in keeping with the method for determining what is figurative and what is literal which is found in the *Commentary on the True Intent of the Sutras*, all following the three treatises just mentioned.

कर् क्षेत्रकृतात्मात्रकृत्यात्मेश्वर्ता व यायाव्यत्यात्मेश्वर्त्ताक्षेत्रक्ष्यात्मेश्वर्त्ताक्षेत्रक्

In his work called the *Levels of Listeners*, Arya Asanga described certain methods that had been spoken in a number of works within the scriptural collection of the lesser way. These show how what we call "rhinoceros-like" self-made buddhas and those belonging to the family of the greater way can achieve, in a single sitting, levels such as the path of accumulation (which would normally take a hundred eons) and the various stages—"heat" and those above it—within the path of preparation (which would normally take three "countless" eons).

यास्यान्यः हुँ त्रायान्त्रः हुँ त्रायान्तः हुँ त्रा

Now admittedly the ultimate worldview, that of emptiness, is repeatedly described in the fourth of the five books: the *Jewel of Realizations*. Nonetheless, the main subject set forth in this work concerns the precise nature, number, and order of the stages by which persons of the three different types achieve their realizations. This is a topic which is hidden within the more extensive, the medium-length, and the more abbreviated versions of the sutras on the perfection of wisdom, and the Master brings it out clearly in this text.

चीतु. क्र्यूमः ह्र्रेंच्यास्त्रियान् स्थान्य स्थान्य

Now the fifth and final book, the Commentary to the Latter Part of the Series, on the Greater Way, presents something which can only be taught to certain people after their minds have already been cultivated using the methods of the Consciousness-Only School; or, in the case of those disciples who already of the greater-way type and who have intellectual faculties of the very highest order, from the very beginning. In fact, it is something path which has to be realized even in order to the "enlightenment" of the listener track and that of the self-made buddha's track.

And this something happens to be the fact that every object in the universe is devoid of any true existence; the ultimate reality; that which is free of any false elaboration. This emptiness is clearly described both in the more extensive, the medium-length, and more abbreviated versions of the sutras on the perfection of wisdom, as well as in the *Sutra on the Buddha-Essence*, without any difference in the presentations.

And it is this emptiness which I will now explain, in a very clear way, in my own commentary—exactly as the Master himself intended it.

#### The Six Ouestions of the King

After returning from the paradise of Maitreya, Arya Asanga went into the forest in a very secluded area; here he taught the five books to a select group of his disciples. In time, the arya's fame spread throughout the land—people began to say that he could perform miracles. The local king tested the master to see if this were the case and, when he realized that this was truly a master, supported Arya Asanga for the rest of his life in building Buddhist universities, retreat centers, and so on. Here is some of the story of the test, from the *History of Buddhism* by the venered Taranatha (1575-1634).

प्रेम्प्रास्त्र स्वार्थित् स्वार्ये स्वार्ये स्वार्थित् स्वार्ये स्वार्ये स्वार्ये स्वार्ये स्वार्थित् स्वार्ये स्वार्

In that time the king of the land was named Gambhira Paksha; he used to recite out loud the sutras on the perfection of wisdom. One day he thought to himself, "Everyone says that this master is an arya, and that he has the ability to read other people's minds. Now if this is true, then I too will sing his praises. But if it is not true, then this man is deceiving the people; and I will do my best to expose him in public, and bring about his downfall."

र्टान्न प्रचेत्र सुम्रास्य प्रमास्य प्

The king then consulted with his ministers, Brahmin priests, and some five hundred very trustworthy people. They decided to invite the Master and his followers into the confines of the palace, amidst a great crowd of people. They presented the group with fine offerings of food and new robes.

Meanwhile, the king had a bull taken to an inner room, painted over with whitewash, and left hidden there. Then he took a vase made of pure gold and poured a great variety of filthy things into it. On top of this he added a thick layer of honey, then covered the vase with a cloth. He picked it up in his hands, went out to where the Master waited, and asked him, "What do I have in my private quarters? And what do I have here in my hands?" The Master's reply was right on the mark.

यक्षेत्र, प्रकृत, क्षेट, दे, प्रतान क्षेत्र, यह प्रकृत क्षेत्र, यह प्रकृत, य

The king thought to himself, "Even somebody with just a little ability to see hidden things could have figured that out. So let's see if he can actually read minds or not." And so mentally, without saying anything, he asked the Master six questions about the sutras on the perfection of wisdom. Three of the questions concerned certain wording found in the sutras, and three of the questions concerned the meaning of the sutras. The Master was able to answer all the questions correctly, and even went so far as to compose various small treatises on each of them, all in keeping with ideas like the three natures.

दर्मीरारम्। चैराक्षेयामुम्भारतयात्तरात् प्रमाह्मभासीरमामह्र्यास्मम्भारत्वेस्यान्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त चैराक्षेयामुम्भारत्त्रात्तरात्तरात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्र

Here are the three questions about the wording:

(1) "Lord Buddha was asked the following question: 'The word "bodhisattva" can refer to yet another term. What is that term?' And yet all the Buddha replied was, 'A bodhisattva is something that is perfectly, absolutely, impossible to see.' Are we then to consider this one of those ideas about which Lord Buddha refused to comment?"

### वःवित्रः हुः तुष्राके वः तयः व्यायकुः वित्रायके विष्यात्रे विषयात्रे विष

(2) "Lord Buddha once spoke of a metaphor for a huge body: He said 'There is a bird with a huge body, one which reaches 500 *yojana* [about 750 miles].' What is the true meaning of this metaphor?"

स्यात्रम् स्यात्री स्थात्र स्याया स्थाया स्थाय स्थाय

(3) "Lord Buddha once said, 'Once you no longer see any sign of the mountains and forest, you know you are approaching the sea.' What marks the line then where you still see the signs?"

"The first," replied the Master, "is a reference to the inner state of emptiness. The second is talking about virtuous karma of immense power. The third refers to the "greater" or final step within the stage of the path of preparation known as "the highest of things."

Here are the three questions about the meaning:

(1) "Does foundation consciousness exist in a substantial way or not?"

(2) "Lord Buddha proclaimed that no object in the universe has any essence of its own. Does this imply that this lack of essence itself lacks any essence?"

(3) "It is explained that emptiness doesn't make every object in the universe empty. What is the emptiness that doesn't make things this way; and what is the emptiness that isn't made this way?"

### 

The Master answered all three questions just as they were meant to be. To the first he replied, "Deceptively speaking, foundation consciousness does exist in a substantial way. And a kind of consciousness or mind that we could talk about in ultimate terms has no meaning at all."

To the second question he replied: "If we keep in mind the idea of the three different kinds of a lack of essence, one must then divide the general lack of essence itself into one which does, further, lack any essence of its own; and one which does not."

To the third question he replied, "The first emptiness in question, the one which could have made things empty, only refers to the state of mind perceiving emptiness. The way in which it could have made things empty is to make something devoid of something now that it wasn't devoid of before. And both of these—a mind that could *make* things empty, and an emptiness that it made which didn't exist before—are something that I deny could exist at all."

#### How High Was the Arya?

There are only a handful of Buddhist sages in the last few millenia who are openly said to have reached the direct perception of emptiness (the state of an arya) and the wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta). Three of these happen to be Lord Maitreya, Arya Asanga, and Arya Nagarjuna. Here is how their achievements are described in the accounts of Buton Rinpoche and Taranatha.

[Taranatha writes that when Master Asanga had his vision of Lord Maitreya after attempting to help the wounded dog,]

Lord Maitreya said to him: "Well then now pick me up on your shoulders, and show me to all the people in the town there."

This the Master did, but none of them saw anything at all on his shoulders.

## में विरावश्चेर प्रशासी देश देश देश के स्थास स स्थास स

There was though one barmaid walking by who saw the Master carrying a puppy on his shoulders, and because of this she later on gained that spiritual attainment called "never-ending material wealth." There was also a poor man, who made his living carrying things on his back, that saw just the very end of Lord Maitreya's foot. And even this much allowed him to reach a state of deep concentration, and the various spiritual attainments that are shared with meditators of other traditions. At this point too, Master Asanga himself attained the "meditative concentration of the stream of the Dharma," [which is an ability to recall spiritual teachings one has received in the past, with ease. This ability is gained during the Path of Preparation, prior to seeing emptiness directly.]

[Buton Rinpoche writes that] *Clear Words*, an explanation of the briefer commentary, states that "[By the end of his life] Master Asanga was able to attain the third bodhisattva level, [which would require seeing emptiness directly on the first level, and therefore understanding the very highest presentation of emptiness]. Nonetheless, he presented the teachings of the Mind-Only School, only in order to guide his brother Vasubandhu further.

[Buton Rinpoche writes further that] the commentary to the *Jewel of the Mind-Only School* says that "Maitreya was a bodhisattva on the tenth bodhisattva level; Asanga was a bodhisattva on the third bodhisattva level; and Nagarjuna was a bodhisattva on the first bodhisattva level."



### Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Reading Two: The Seven Diamond-Like Visions

#### The Translator Pays Respect

After he had received the text of the Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series from Lord Maitreya, Arya Asanga himself wrote a treatise on the work entitled A Complete Explanation of the Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series. This explanation, along with Lord Maitreya's root text, were both translated into Tibetan by none other than Lord Atisha (982-1054), the Indian master who played a large role in bringing teachings like the Steps on the Path to Tibet.

It was customary for the translator to bow down, as he or she began a translation, to one or more holy beings. Interestingly, the lines we have for this obeisance in the Tibetan, and an obeisance at the beginning of the original Sanskrit, are different—and perhaps this tell us something about the nature of the *Latter Part* itself:

### <u> यर्थः क्रुयः दरः चुरः क्र्यः बेस्यः दययः वस्यः उदः यः धुवाः वर्द्रयः वेश</u>

I bow down to all the Buddhas and bodhisattvas.

ओं नमः श्रीवज्रस वाय ।

Om. I bow down to the glorious Warrior of Diamond, Vajrasattva.

The Seven Diamond-Like Visions

| अरशःक्रिशःक्र्यःक्र्यायः अयः ५८:वृदः कुवः ५८: । ऑन्न:मनःसरमः क्रुकः स्वेतः यकाः वःसः ।

# | नसूत्र नर्डे भः गुत्र मुः त्यु भः तेः अर्दे रः नसूः त्र

बुद्धश् च धर्मश् च गणश् च धातुर् बोधिर् गुणाः कर्म च बौद्धम् अन्त्यम्। कृत्स्त्रस्य शास्त्रस्य शरीरम् एतत् समासतो वज्रपदानि सप्त।

This entire body of work is summarized by the seven realms of diamond: Buddhahood, holy Dharma, the Collection, the Essence, the Buddhas, Good Qualities, and lastly, the Activities of a Buddha.

#### The Two Forms of Each Vision

इश्रासुत्यद्वरकान्ने देवी प्राप्त स्वार्षे विश्वास्त स्वार्षे विश्वास स्वार्षे स्वर्षे स्वार्षे स्वार्षे स्वार्षे स्वार्षे स्वार्षे स्वार्षे स्वार् स्वार् स्वार्षे स्वार् स्वार्षे स्वार् स्वरं स्वार् स्वर

अनिदर्शनो ह्यानन्द तथागतः। स न शक्यश् चक्षुषा द्रष्टुम्। अनिभलाप्यो ह्यानन्द धर्मः। स न शक्यः कर्णेन श्रोतुम्। असंस्कृतो ह्यानन्द संघः। स न शक्यः कायेन वा चि न वा पर्युपासितुम्। इतीमानि त्रिणी वज्रपदानि हढाध्याशय परिवर्तानुसारेणानुगन्तव्यानि।

What we call the Three Realms of Diamond

Should be understood in keeping with The chapter on ultimate responsibility:

No one, O Ananda, could ever show you Buddhahood,

For it is impossible to see with the eye.

No one, O Ananda, could ever express the Dharma,

For it is impossible to hear with the ear.

No one, O Ananda, could ever bring the Community together,

For it is impossible to worship it with either body or mind.

२८.। गीय.ह्र्च.स.बु.श्रट्श.क्चिश.क्ची.चीचीयाजी. ेत्।। ट्रेंब.टश.सदु.श्रटश.क्चिश.बु। श्रटश.स.टर.लु.पुश.सीय.श्रेंश.क्र्यूचीश.सदु.प्रट.चलुय.क्र्य.क्ची. क्चित.क्च.ह्या उट्ट.टचा.क्चर.ट्र्ब.टश.टर.गीय.ह्र्च.स.चिश्व.चिश.क्चीश.क्ची.स.प्रचे.क्षी।

Gyaltsab Je writes:

Now you should understand that each of these [the seven diamond-like visions] can be divided into two forms each: the ultimate form and the deceptive form. [1] The ultimate form of the Buddha is the body of reality (the dharmakaya). It has a nature of including both the perfect elimination of all undesirable qualities, and perfect wisdom. The deceptive form of the Buddha is the body of form (the rupakaya).

[2] The ultimate form of the Dharma consists of two truths—those of cessation and those of the path—in the mental continuum of one of the higher way. The deceptive form of the Dharma consists of the body of the teachings.

[3] The ultimate form of the Sangha consists of the realizations and liberation in the mental continuum of a realized being who belongs to the greater way. The deceptive form conists of the community of realized beings who belong to the greater way.

द्वान्त्रेयः प्रशास्त्रः विश्वस्त्रः क्षेत्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्र यद्याः मेत्रः प्रशास्त्रः प्रशास्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्

[4] The ultimate form of the essence is the emptiness of any natural existence to the mind possessed in the mental continuum of a suffering being; that is, suchness which is still involved with impurity. The deceptive form of the essence is the condition that consists of the potential—located in the mind of a suffering being—for developing qualities which transcend the suffering world.

[5] The ultimate form of an Enlightened One is the body of reality, while the deceptive form is the body of form. As the text itself states,

The wealth in which This high being resides Is the body within Its ultimate form.

These and other related points we will cover further on.

"Well then," one may ask, "what is the difference between this vision and the Buddha that you mentioned at the beginning?" They are both, admittedly, equivalent to the Buddha Jewel. The only reason that we present them separately in this list is that one consists of the Buddha which is to come within ones own being, and the other the Buddha already achieved within another's being.

स्यामान्ने स्वास्त्रीत् स्वास्त्रीत् स्वास्त्रमान्ने स्वास्त्

[6] The ultimate form of enlightened qualities consists of the powers and the rest of the 32 qualities of freedom. The deceptive form of enlightened qualities consists of the 32 qualities that ripen from past deeds.

द्वेत्र त्यत्र र्नेत्र न्या यहै। यह स्त्रुप्य प्येत्र प्येत्र प्येत्र प्या प्येत्र प्या स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्र स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्र स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्रा स्त्र प्र स्त्र प्र स्त्र प्र स्त्र प्र स्त्र स्त्र प्र स्त्र प्र स्त्र स्त्

[7] The ultimate form of enlightened activity consists of the "wisdom of accomplishment," while the deceptive form consists of the body of the teachings.

Why They Are Like a Diamond

स्यायवित्याया ह्यायायये हें हे यु यदे दे के ते के स्यायवित्याय स्थायवित्याय स्थायवित्याय हें हे ये यदे हे हे य स्यायवित्याया हें यायाय हें हे यु यदे हे के यदे हे हे यु यदे हे हे यु यदे हे हे यायाय स्थाय स्थाय स्थाय स्थाय स्यायवित्याया हें यायाय हें हे यायाय हे स्थाय स्थाय

वज्रोपमस्याधिगमार्थस्य पदं स्थानम् इति वज्रपदम्।

त श्रुतिचिन्तामयज्ञानदुष्प्रतिवेधाद् अनिभलाप्यस्वभावः प्रत्यात्मवेदनीयो ऽर्थो वज्रवद् वेदितव्यः।।

The explanation [of Master Asanga] says:

These are "realms of diamond" that we seek to perceive. Because they are the basis of the diamond, we call them "realms" or "places" of diamond. Understand that they are similar to a diamond in the sense that it is difficult to pierce them with the kind of comprehension that you get from learning or simple contemplation: they are objects which have a

nature which cannot be expressed, and must be grasped by each person individually.

\*\*\*\*\*

यस श्रामा स्थान हैं श्रामा निवाह स्थान स्था स्थान स्थ

#### Gyaltsab Je writes:

Now one should understand that the seven visions, the seven objects to be realized, are like a diamond. This is because they are a nature of things which cannot be fully expressed, cannot be realized with the state of mind that deals in words and ideas. And it is also because they are known only by realized beings, on an individual basis.

चीत्रात्त्रेयात्रेयात्त्रेयात् क्षेत्राचित्रेयात्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात् विश्वात्त्रेयात्त्यात्त्रेयात्त्

It's not that they can only be ultimate reality; here we are including the wisdom which perceives that directly. All seven of these diamond-like visions are said to be "inexpressible" from the point of view of their ultimate reality, as something which is perceived directly.

र्श्वेस्टर ेरे पार्वेष्य बायवेर्द्वर्मायहत्यविष्ठाः व त्यव्वे प्रुः साम्यः विष्ठे

And when we speak of "knowing on an individual basis" we are not restricting ourselves to the meditative perception of a realized being which is engaged with ultimate reality; their other forms of wisdom—those that come in the aftermath of the direct perception of emptiness we also consider "knowing on an individual basis."

क्याण्ट्यासुर्वेत्व्याचे विष्याचे स्टाय्या स्टाया स्टाय्या स्टाया स्टाय्या स्टाय्या स्टाय्या स्टाय्या स्टाय स्टाय्या स्टाय स्टाय स्टाय्या स्टाय स्टाय्या स्टाय्या स्टाय्या स्टाय्या स्टाय स्टाय

It's not at all the same thing to say that something cannot be expressed—in the sense that it cannot be called by a word or name given to it—and to say that ultimate reality cannot be expressed in words. It can be the case that, even though you are unable to engage in the very nature of what a word or the name of something refers to, you can nonetheless grasp it entirely in a manner in which the way a thing appears and the way that thing really is are different.

तीयाश्चार्यः तालुष्यः त्रात्त्रे स्वर्त्वात् ।

तीयाश्चार्यः त्रात्त्रे स्वर्त्वात् ।

तीयाश्चारः त्रात्त्रे स्वर्त्वात् ।

तीयाश्चारः त्रात्त्रे स्वर्त्वात् ।

तीयाश्चारः स्वर्वे ।

तीयाश्वे ।

तीयाश्वे ।

तीयाश्वे ।

तीयाश्वे ।

तीयाश्वे ।

तीयाश्वे ।

The point of saying "inexpressible" here is that no matter how someone expresses to you the real nature of things in words or ideas, and no matter how much you think about what they say, you cannot then realize this thing in the way that a realized being does as they perceive it directly. It is *not* the point though to suggest that ultimate reality is something that could never at all be understood through the use of words and ideas. One who accepted this would be falling into the position that ultimate reality is not a thing which can be perceived; this is a denial of an integral part of reality, the position of the Brahmans, a foul and meaningless idea that should simply be discarded.

### On the Number of the Seven

निः यात्रेशः सुवः शुक्षः क्रिंगः यात्रेशः अध्यः श्रुवाः यात्रेशः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्व वाह्रेशः सुवः शुक्षः क्रिंगः यात्रेशः अध्यः श्रुवाः यात्रेशः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स

Now the ultimate form of the Three Jewels is a result that one must achieve oneself; the number of the Jewels is fixed at exactly what it is because these are what are necessary to complete, perfectly, the two goals: [that is, one's own, and all others' ultimate needs]. The reason for this will be explained below.

And the causes for the resulting Three Jewels are also exactly two: there are the material cause and the contributing factor.

प्रिस्ति । प्रमानिक्षियात् विक्षात् क्षेत्र प्रमानिक्षात् । प्रमानिक्षात् विक्षात् विक्षात्

The first of the two is the essence. Here if the quality of thusness which still has impurity were not an essence which is pure by nature, then it would never be right for there to occur a purity which is free of impurity and which is achieved. Therefore this essence which is pure by nature is simply called a "material cause" without which enlightenment could never occur. And it is only *called* this kind of cause, because there is no relationship of something being caused to grow by something else causing it to grow. It is also the case that the Buddha nature which comes about through practice *is* a proper cause which causes something else to grow.

त्रप्ति स्त्रप्ति स्ति स्त्रप्ति स्त्रप्ति स्त्रप्ति स्त्रप्ति स्त्रप्ति स्त्रप्ति स्

The second of the two, the contributing factor, consists of the Enlightened One, the enlightened qualities, and the enlightened activity which have already been achieved within the mental continuum of another person. This is because another person first achieves total enlightenment, and then turns the wheel of the Dharma perfectly. And because of this, one is able to purify oneself completely of the impurities within ones own mental continuum. Thus the contributing factor here is limited to an external factor.

विश्वायः विद्।।

देश्यः प्रति ।

देशः प्रति

All of this is indicating only a certain cause and effect in the sense of a gross cause and effect in the process of purification, where what we are mainly concentrating on is the quality of thusness which is still possessed of impurity. This though is not the only category we could be talking about. There are also inner factors, such as focusing ones mind on an object properly, which are realized in the process of presenting the idea of essence as something which purifies one. You should understand that these too can be included therefore within what we call "essence."

तालकालुकाला के.च.लटाक्की.चाक्षेका.टटाक्कीका.चाक्षेका.वर्षेका.चर्षेका.चर

You can also say that, in order for one to develop the ultimate form of the Three Jewels within ones mental continuum, one must meditate on correct worldview; and this worldview in turn comes about through two causes and two factors.

The two causes are (1) ones own essence and (2) focusing the mind properly. The two factors are (1) the Enlightened One, along with the other two, as they have already occurred within Those Who Have Gone Thus in the past, as well as (2) the words of another person. The "words of another person" you should understand as being included within enlightened activity.

न्त्रीयः याश्च्याः य विश्वयाः याश्च्याः य

Here is the third point from above. Now you may think to yourself, "It seems as though it would have been enough simply to present, in terms of the goal one is seeking to achieve, the Buddha Jewel; what need was there to present all three of the Jewels?"

श्चित्रः भ्रीत्रः भ्रीत्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ् भ्रीत्रः भ्रीत्रः भ्रीत्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्रात्रः भ्र

There is no fault to presenting it this way; in order to attract those of all three of the different tracks, we present the Jewels in three separate names which relate to the resulting refuge that corresponds to each of these same three tracks.

श्री क्षेत्रात्तर त्वियां ।

योष्ठेर त्या क्षेत्र ह्या क्षेत्र ह्या क्षेत्र ह्या क्षेत्र त्विया ह्या त्या क्षेत्र त्या क्षेत्र ह्या क्षेत्र त्या कष्ट त्या क्षेत्र त्या कष्ट त्या क्षेत्र त्या कष्ट त्या क्षेत्र त्या कष्ट त्य कष्ट त्या कष्ट त्य त्या कष्ट त्या

And this is true because we set forth the Three Jewels as the resulting refuge in order to attract people of the three tracks, as follows. Those who belong to the track of the greater way aspire to a fully enlightened Buddha as the object towards whom they take the result form of refuge. Those who belong to the track of a "self-made" Buddha aspire to using a realization of dependent origination in order to end their suffering within the cycle of

suffering; this then becomes the object towards which they take the result form of refuge. And those who belong to the listener track aspire to reaching their final rebirth and then utilizing the words of another to attain the state of one who is still learning and who has ended their suffering; this represents then the object towards which they take the result form of refuge.

### On the Order of the Seven

|पाशुअ'य'में देश'य'य'दे पादेश'य'देश'य'देश'यदे प्रत्ये प्रत्ये

Here thirdly is the question about why the order of the seven is fixed the way it is.

One may ask: "Can you explain how these seven visions—the objects that one seeks to realize—are connected in a certain logical order, one always coming after the other?"

Here then is the answer to the question.

It is from Buddhas who are fully enlightened about every object in the universe that we get the wheel of the Dharma being turned, perfectly, for people who are realized beings. And it is through this perfect turning of the wheel of the Dharma that we get the Jewel of the Sangha—the assembly of realized beings—and possessing infinite assemblies of realized beings as ones disciples.

यहेब.बब.तसवीब.तप्र.क्ष्यीब.सच.क्ष्याचेब.क्ष्याचेब.क्ष्याचेव.स्य.क्ष्याचेव.क्षयचेव.क्ष्याचेव.क्ष्याचेव.क्ष्याचेव.क्ष्याचेव.क्ष्याचेव.कष्याच.कष्याच.कष्याचेव.कष्याचेव.कष्याचेव.कष्याचेव.कष्याच.कष्य

Becoming oneself a totally enlightened Buddha—and being able then to turn, perfectly, the wheel of the Dharma—is the goal upon which the wish for enlightenment focuses, within the mental continuum of the type of disciple for whom the *Commentary on the Latter Part* was designed. And the whole idea behind the wish for enlightenment is that this would in turn trigger infinite assemblies of realized beings.

And it is from the assembly of realized beings that the Buddha-nature occurs. This is explained in the following way. The ultimate form of the Three Jewels, and the Three Jewels in the sense of an immediate cause, are things that one seeks to attain within ones own mental continuum. Along with this comes the aspiration that, once one has become enlightened, you will then be able to bring about the assembly of realized beings that results from your turning the wheel of the Dharma. This then triggers the desire to clean oneself of the impurities that accompany the Buddha-nature within ones own being. From this then proceeds the Buddha-nature which is purified of some one or more of the different kinds of impurities.

भ्राचित्।

याने प्रविधानिकारात् भ्रीट मृत्विश्व चित्र प्रविश्व चित्र प्रविधानिकार प्रविधानिकार

One may ask how far up there is still a Buddha-nature. The idea of "Buddha-nature" applies all the way up to that final stage where one attains the goal of "Buddha-essence," in the sense of the wisdom of a Buddha who has ended each and every impurity. It is that

suchness which still possesses impurity, all the way up to that stage; and the capacity for the enlightened activity of a Buddha to work within the mental continuum of a suffering living being. Once one has attained "Buddha-essence" in the sense of a Buddha's nature which is this final wisdom, we would no longer refer to it as what is normally meant by the expression "Buddha-nature."

You should understand that the above presentation serves, incidentally, as a refutation of the idea held by certain people of little understanding that the Buddha-nature directly indicated by the expression "Buddha-nature" could still exist even at that point when one had already attained the final goal.

याल्ये स्त्री।

याम्यक्षेत्र त्यान्त्र प्रति हित्र प्रति स्त्री स्त्री

According to the second explanation given previously, the purification of ones own essence occurs through the appearance in the world of the Three Jewels in the sense of the object in which one takes causal refuge. From this purification then one attains the state of an Enlightened Being and the other two. That interpretation would admittedly fit, to some extent, the way in which the order is presented in the present verse, which is given to explain this order. Nonetheless, it is patently obvious that the main thing that the author is seeking to set forth here is the way in which the three of the Enlightened Being and so on act as factors.

# The Asian Classics Institute

## Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Reading Three: Becoming a Shelter for the World

The Student the Book was Meant For

मुव्यार्कवाहेषा वदे वृत्राचेषायम् वृष्यादे हो क्षेत्राद्येव ले वावर्केषाद्र वृत्यामुकाद्राद्रवरः र्देव वाया वाय दिया प्रति हैया प्रति हैया वाया हैया विकास स्रमा वर्नम्यप्राचे प्राक्रेन में कुरान्ना स्रवेश्यक्षेत्र पर्देश ग्रीके रात्रुप्त रुपान् रियान् वेश र्रे में वे पाळेब पेंदिने बाउब न्वर पेंद्रें वेंदि त्यवात्य तह् प्यदे नेवाप नर्दे बार्य नेवाय व्यवस्था व र्वेश्वर्देशचीः व शाचीश र वराचेर परे धेरारे।।

### Gyaltsab Je writes:

Understand this point as follows. In his Jewel of the Middle Way, the Master Shanta Rakshita describes both the stages by which a disciple of sharp faculties engages in the path, and the stages by which a disciple of dull faculties engages in the path. In our present text then what we describe directly are the stages by which the primary disciple for whom the Commentary on the Later Part, on the Greater Way was designed—which is to say, a person of sharp faculties who belongs to the greater way—engages in the path. Realize that, by so doing, we also imply that there does exist the other set of stages too.

पः क्षेत्रास्ट्रास्यत्ये वायरम् मृत्राद्वेत्राहेत्रासुः बोस्याः उदायाः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः र्वेत पर नुर्ते अन्तर्भे अभावश्चेत पर देश पर पर देश पर पर पर विकास में कि स्वापित के स्वापित पर पर विकास पर पर अर्घर प्रमुख प्रकार प्राप्त प्रमुख रेवि खु अ प्येष प्रवे ख्री स रे ।

One may ask how all this can be established logically. A person of sharp faculties who belongs to the greater way does so first by establishing, clearly, two things—and always both of them together. These are (1) the fact that one must attain perfect, total enlightenment for the sake of every living being; and (2) the fact that it is possible to do so. After this they make the resolution of the wish for enlightenment: they think to themselves, "I will now attain Buddhahood for the sake of every living being." If though one were to make this same resolution without having any logical reason for doing so, then this would indicate that they were a person of dull faculties.

द्रायद्रश्रयाः हेत्र्यायायश्यद्वेश्वर्यात् क्ष्याय्यात् व्याप्त स्त्रित् व्याप्त स्त्रित् व्याप्त स्त्रित् व्य इत्यायश्यद्वेश्वर्याः भ्रम्यायश्यद्वेश्वर्याः स्त्रित् व्याप्त स्त्रित् स्त्रित्

Now it is from grasping, clearly, just how it is that one develops both great compassion and a pure sense of personal responsibility that one can realize that it is necessary to achieve enlightenment for the sake of living beings. And it is from realizing emptiness and everything that goes along with it that one can realize that it is even possible to attain enlightenment.

लय.जया.धे.जुजानर विद्री।

विद्री । प्रमान याजीशानर क्रिंट क्रेट याचेयाल स्मान स्मान

From this you can deduce then that—for a person of sharp faculties—it is necessary first to perceive emptiness, even if all you hope to do is develop the state of mind that hopes for no more than achieving the freedom of nirvana. And from the *Book of Three Levels* one can understand that people of dull faculties first develop the wish for enlightenment, and only afterwards work to grasp emptiness. One should also be aware that, even though emptiness is covered in the *Book of Three Levels*, it is done so only in a way which is ancillary to the main emphasis of the text, which treats the teachings on method.

त्तुः क्रूँट क्रेट ह्येशातातात द्रियाम अहूट हो। ह्या श्रा क्रूँट क्रेट ह्येशातातात द्रियाम अहूट हो। ह्या श्रा क्रूँच ह्या श्रा क्रूंच ह्या श्रा क्र्या ह्या ह्या क्र्या क्र्या ह्या क्र्या क्र्या ह्या क्र्या क्र्या क्र्या ह्या क्र्या क्र्या ह्या क्र्या क्र्या ह्या क्र्या क्र्या क्र्या क्र्या ह्या क्र्या क्रया क्र्या क्रया क्र्या क्र्या क्र्या क्र्या क्र्या क्रया क्र्या क्रया क्र

And it's not at all as if Those Who Have Gone Thus would abandon their efforts to lead these disciples further on. Because after this point they help them destroy any chance that there could appear in their minds any thought that would focus solely on their own needs, striving for nirvana for themselves alone and deserting others by ignoring what they need. And for this these Buddhas employ perfectly pure discussions in which they demonstrate to these disciples how the three elements in any particular interaction are empty of existing by nature; and to these words too they link the method side of things, in its most complete form, speaking to these disciples in turnings of the wheel about how one can never turn back from the search for total enlightenment.

In this way then Those Thus Gone do their work in the realm of suffering beings who possess a great variety of different sorts of potential: they carry their disciples up to the perception of emptiness, a perception which is imbued with the fullest form of the method side of things, by addressing the various seeds within them; the various types of students; speaking to their various aspirations, whether they be to reach the enlightenment of a listener, or that of a "self-made" Buddha, or that of the greater way.

The Meaning of the Jewel

From the root text of the Commentary on the Latter Part:

विद्युर्त्तः दर्गिवः श्वेरः द्वेरः योदः श्वेरः। । यद्युरः युरः श्वेरः द्वरः व्यद्येषाः हेवः श्वेरः। । यद्युरः यः योदः श्वेरः दर्गिवः योद्येषः हेदः। । विद्युरः यः योदः श्वेरः दर्गिवः योद्येषः हेदः।

र ानि दुर्लभोत्पादान् निर्मलत्वात् प्रभावतः। लोकालंकारभूतत्वादु अग्रत्वान् निर्विकारतः।

The Jewels are the perfect "Rare Supremes" Because they occur only rarely, And because they are free of impurity, Possessed of great power, Jewel ornaments for the world, Infinitely supreme, and never-wavering.

Gyaltsab Je comments on the verse as follows:

Here then is the third point, which is an explanation of the meaning of the name "Jewel," [which in Tibetan consists of the two words *koin*, or "rare," and *chok*, or "supreme"]. This we will cover in two parts, relating to the root text and to the commentary.

The Sanskrit word *ratna* refers to a precious stone, and in a case where we add togetheer several units of meaning to convey a specific sense can also be translated as "jewel" (*koin-chok*), or that which is rare and supreme. There are six different ways in which the Jewels are like precious stones.

They are, first of all, (1) rare in that they occur only rarely. Because they are (2) free of the impurity of their opposites, they are free of the fault of failing to help you achieve what you wish. They are (3) possessed of great power, and so they are of great value.

The Jewels are, furthermore, of great benefit; thus they are (4) jewel ornaments for the world. Of all the objects which have high qualities like those just mentioned, they are (5) infinitely supreme—and so they are truly unique. Finally, they react neither to praise nor to criticism or the like, and are thus (6) never-wavering. And it is for all these reasons that we call them "Jewels."

भ्रानश्चित्रप्तक्षेत्रप्तक्षेत्रप्तक्षेत्रप्तक्षेत्रप्ति । विद्वास्त्रक्षेत्रप्तक्षेत्रप्तक्षेत्रप्तक्षेत्रप्त क्ष्यभ्राम्बद्धित्रप्तक्षेत्रप्तक्षेत्रप्तक्षेत्रप्ति । विद्वास्त्रस्यक्षेत्रच्याः अत्यक्षेत्रप्तक्ति

Here now we turn to the second point, the commentary, where it speaks of "in summary..." The Jewels are like precious stones in that they occur only rarely; a great many eons may come and go, but those who have failed to develop the necessary store of virtue will never get a chance to encounter them.

तर्भः मृत्युद्धः त्यः द्वाराष्ट्रभ्यः यो स्वर्धः यो स्वर्धः यो स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर

The point of this particular part is to advise us that—given that the Jewels are supreme among all things that occur only rarely, and given that they are so incredibly difficult to find—then in this moment that we have found them we must go for refuge to them, making the greatest of efforts to do so, and never leaving off these efforts.

द्रयात्राक्ति विश्व के स्वतः भ्राया के स्वार्थ स्वार्

If you take a wishing jewel, and clean it carefully, it becomes free of impurities such as dirt and the like. The Jewels are free of impurity in just this same way; they are totally free of the impurity of being unable to protect us, or of failing us when we need them. This part is meant to convey the fact that the Jewels are free of the fault of not having the capacity to protect us; and that the Jewels alone are appropriate as a refuge, whereas worldly deities and the like are not.

त्तुः स्तुरः स्त्रा । त्रिन्त्रः में स्त्राच्या स्त्राच स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्या स्त्राच्य

A wish-giving jewel grants us food, and clothing, and other things we can use; thus it is of great power. In the same way, the Jewels are possessed of the inconceivable power of their high qualities: the six different types of supernormal perception and the like.

त्यीयःत्रम्य थःस्। त्यीयःत्रम्य थःस्। त्यीयःत्रम्यः थःस्। त्यीयःत्रम्यः थःस्। त्यीयःत्रम्यः व्याप्तिः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष्यः

A wish-giving jewel grants a great many of the things that people of the world might wish. The Jewels too are jewels for the world, since they are the cause behind great virtue: the wish that all living beings might achieve the higher rebirths and ultimate good. This part is meant to demonstrate how helpful the Jewels are, and the great necessity for taking refuge in them.

श्चीयश्चर स्वीत्र श्ची स्वीत्र स्वाप्त स्वाप्

A wish-giving jewel is infinitely supreme when compared to fake jewels. Thee Jewels again are similar, in that they have transcended the world. This part is describing how the Jewels have nothing in common with false kinds of refuge, such as worldly deities; it shows how the Jewels are matchless, and the very highest kind of refuge.

A wish-giving jewel does not show any kind of reaction in the face of praise or criticism, or anything of the like. The Jewels too are the same, never wavering in the way that they protect us, regardless of whether we praise or criticize them, whatever. And this is because they are distinguished by their direct perception of ultimate reality, whose nature has not been produced by varying causes or factors.

The entire description above completes our presentation of the Jewels in the sense of a result that one is attempting to attain.

Taking Shelter in the Buddha

Gyaltsab Je describes taking refuge in the following words:

Here secondly is our explanation of the meaning of refuge. We will present first the meaning of refuge in general, and then treat the meaning of particular cases. The former of these will be covered itself in three categories: the divisions of the object in which we take refuge; the way in which we take refuge in this object, and then support for these concepts.

र्राक्ष्यायम् विवासिक्षायाः विवासिक्षायः विवास

Here is the first of the three. The presentation we will make here on the subject of refuge will be made relative to the concept of the three objects of refuge as it appears in the teachings in general; it is not something we will present only with reference to the three Jewels mentioned so far in this particular commentary.

रटः क्रीट्राया क्रिया क्रीया व्यापा क्रीया व्यापा क्रीया क्रीय क्रीया क

Now the types of refuge are two: refuge where a result is set forth as the object of refuge, and refuge where a cause is set forth as the object of refuge. As for the first, people who belong to the greater way seek to achieve all three of the Jewels within their own being; as such, all three of the Jewels can be considered for them resulting objects of refuge.

म्द्रिन्यः क्ष्यं न्यां व स्वर्ध्याः स्वर्ध्यः स्वर्ध्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर

As for people who belong to the track of a "self-made" Buddha or that of a listener, it is only either the Dharma Jewel or the Sangha Jewel which can be considered, respectively, an object of refuge for them. Now it is admittedly true that listeners do attain the Dharma Jewel within their being, but the presentation as we give it here is relative to the three divided separately.

तत्र क्षेत्रः स्री।

त्र क्षेत्रः स्री।

Regarding the second type of refuge, we can say that all three of the Jewels may be considered objects of refuge for people of all three of the different tracks. This is because people of all three tracks look towards the Three Jewels when these have already been attained within the being of someone other than themselves, and consider them first as the Teacher who teaches us the path; and then they consider the path that they've been taught as being the path that can bring them to freedom; and consider finally the community of realized beings who are properly practicing this path to be their companions on the path. As such, they see each individual Jewel as being something that they would like to attain within their own being.

चीयः चुत्रः तह्नचीत्रः तः तत्रः स्त्रीयः तत्रः तह्नच त्यः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेत

Here secondly is our description of the way in which we take refuge. It is when we decide deeply in our hearts that we consider the Jewels a foundation and a helpmate in accomplishing our escape from the terrors of suffering and spiritual obstacles; the "Paradise" school also accepts this description of the way. [The Tibetan for this last phrase is unclear and the text may be corrupt.] Considering any particular one or more of the Jewels to be a helpmate in the sense of one to be attained within your own being later on is what we call "result" refuge. Considering those that are already attained within the being of another person to be a helpmate that can liberate us from what we fear is what we call "cause" refuge.

त्रः चेत्। रिश्वः प्रमाशः श्वः योशेशः योशः भ्रीयशः तम्, द्राः प्रमाशः प्रमाशः विद्रः श्रीयशः तम्, योद्रः श्रीयशः योद्रः श्रीयः योद्रः श्रीय

It's not necessarily the case that, if someone takes cause refuge, then they take result refuge in all three Jewels; but it is the case, as we mentioned earlier, that if one takes result refuge then one is taking cause refuge. Therefore you should understand that people of all three tracks take both cause and result refuge.

Here next is the third point, on support for these concepts. They are described as above in the Sutra Requested by the Householder Ugra:

O householder, how is it that a bodhisattva goes for refuge in the Buddha? O householder, a bodhisattva householder does so through the act of thinking to themselves, "I will attain, perfectly, the form of an Enlightened Being, adorned as it is with the 32 signs of a great being." And then they begin to undertake all the virtuous acts through which these 32 signs of a great being are produced. This then is how a householder bodhisattva goes for refuge in the Buddha.

### The Qualities of the Coming Buddha

The following brief description of the Buddha Jewel is taken from a Sera Mey Monastery textbook on the perfection of wisdom written by Choney Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748), who also did the famous commentary to the *Diamond Cutter Sutra*:

स्वानिकात्त्र स

Here secondly is the presentation of our own position. The definition of the Buddha Jewel is "That ultimate place of refuge which has brought the two goals to their ultimate end."

This Buddha Jewel can be divided into two types: the apparant Buddha Jewel and the ultimate Buddha Jewel.

The Buddha Jewel is possessed of eight high qualities: these consist of the two general types of qualities—those that relate to accomplishing ones own goals, and those that relate to accomplishing the goals of others—and then three qualities that come under each of these two types.

दयर हुल चल चतु क्षेत्र , अचीय ततु लूच धेया क्षेत्र में अह्या अह्या अह्या अत्र लूच भेषा है। स्टर्स्य अह्या अस्य लिया है। स्टर्स्य अस्य क्षेत्र भेषा क्षेत्र भेषा क्षेत्र भाष्ट्र भाषा है। स्टर्स्य अस्य क्षेत्र भाष्ट्र भाषा है। स्टर्स्य अस्य क्षेत्र भाष्ट्र भाषा है। स्टर्स्य अस्य क्षेत्र भाषा है। स्टर्स्य क्षेत्र भाषा है। स्टर्स्य क्षेत्र भाषा है। स्टर्स्य क्षेत्र भाषा है। स्टर्स्य क्षेत्र स्टर्स्य स्टर्स्य क्षेत्र स्टर्स्य स्ट

# यदे पंत्र मृतः सुम्र ५५

This further is true because the Buddha Jewel possesses the following two sets of three high qualities each. The qualities that relate to accomplishing ones own goals include:

- (1) The quality of not being produced by other causes and factors;
- (2) The quality of things being accomplished spontaneously, without any conscious effort; and
- (3) The quality that it cannot be realized, fully, only through words and ideas.

The qualities that relate to accomplishing the goals of others include:

- (4) The quality of knowledge—of being able to see all existing objects;
- (5) The quality of love—of love for every living being; and
- (6) The quality of power—of being able to accomplish all goals.

And this is true because the *Commentary to the Latter Part* includes that verse which goes:

डिया सीट्यासदासीटा नित्र हैयास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रा नित्र स्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्राः नित्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्राः नित्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्रास्त्राः नित्रास्त्रा

असंस्कृतम् अना ोगम् अपरप्रत्ययोदितम्। बुद्धत्वं ज्ञानकारुण्यशक्तयुपेतं द्वयार्थवत्।

Buddhahood is a state possessed of two goals, And possessed of knowledge, love, and power. It is unproduced and spontaneous, And does not realize things due to another.

Gyaltsab Je on the Qualities

Our next part, the third, has two sections consisting of a question and the answer to the question. The question goes as follows: "What is this verse teaching us?"

The answer comes in two parts, relating to the root text and to the commentary. Here is the first.

The high spiritual qualities of the Buddha Jewel cover two different categories: the Body of Reality, which relates to the fulfillment of ones own needs; and the Body of Form, which relates to the fulfillment of others' needs.

The first of these itself has two parts: ultimate reality, and understanding. The first of these first involves ultimate truth, which is *unproduced*, a natural state of purity. It includes as well a kind of *spontaneity*, an achieved purity where all conscious effort is

ended. The understanding is a wisdom, a knowledge of the way *things* are, which can only be *realized* by each person on their own, and *not due to another* person.

महिरामान्यात्वर र्र्त्रमाञ्चाराष्ट्रीः त्या हेर्स्नेत्याये प्रेरामान्यात्वर प्रेरामान्यात्वर प्रेरामान्यात्वर प्रेरामान्यात्वर प्रेरामान्यात्वर प्रेरामान्यात्वर प्रेरामान्य प्रेरामान्य प्रिरामान्य प्रेरामान्य प्रेरामान्य

Secondly there is the Body of Form, which fulfills the needs of others. It involves the *knowledge* which perceives the total amount off things to be known; and *love*; and the *power* imparted by knowledge and love. Thus we have Jewel of the *Buddha*, this *state* of enlightenment, *possessed of* bodies that fulfill the *two goals*.

तकर ततु. चन्न श्री क्षेत्र क्रीन त्या तकर ततु क्षेत्र महिन ततु क्षेत्र महिन तहु न त्या तहु स्व क्षेत्र प्राप्त स्व क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्

As for the commentary, these lines from the root text describe—in summary—a state of Buddhahood wherein one is possessed of eight different fine qualities. And what are these eight qualities? The first set are those taken in by the Body of Reality: (1) natural purity, which is unproduced; and (2) spontaneously working for the goals of others in a way where all conscious effort is ended. Now you may wonder why here at the point where we should be speaking about the type of purity which is achieved, we are going into an explanation of this type of spontaneity.

The reason is that there is a certain very subtle factor which acts against our ability to work towards fulfilling the needs of others in a spontaneous way. This factor is considered a kind of obstacle to omniscience, and is what we call "karma without impurity" as a step in the twelve links of dependent origination.

This type of karma refers to a very subtle form of conscious effort or motivation that inspires one to perform actions of body or speech. When this type of effort is ended, then one has reached the ultimate freedom from negativities, and can work to fulfill the needs of others in a way which is effortless, spontaneous.

As noted, (3) the ability to perceive the actual way in which all things exist is not something that one realizes in a direct way through the aid of someone else's words.

त्र हैं त्यक्र हैं। बिराने क्षेत्र क्

Now there are the qualities involved with the Body of Form. These are (4) the wisdom which, knowing the above three, knows the entire amount of things to be known; (5) great compassion; and (6) the power involved with this knowledge and love.

On top of these six then we add the two general categories to which they belong: (7) the ultimate ability to fulfill one's own needs; and (8) the ultimate ability to fulfill the needs of others.

What we've presented here is more for the purposes of enumeration; we'll get into a more detailed explanation of these qualities later on.

Our fourth point from above again involves both the root text and a commentary. Here is the first.

Consider the part of the Buddha's Body of Reality which is a natural purity. We refer to it as the "unproduced" because it has a nature which is free of any beginning, middle, or end in the sense of the three stages of starting, staying, and stopping.

And we speak here of "fulfilling the needs of others in a spontaneous way" in the sense of this proceeding from the Body of Reality, wherein all conscious effort is ended.

What we mean when we say that this body is "not realized due to another," what we mean is that it is not realized through something else in the sense of words and concepts: for it is something which can only be realized by each person in a state of deep meditation.

We speak of a "knowledge of the total amount of things to be known" in the sense of a knowledge of the three different things just described: the natural state of purity, the achieved state of purity, and the wisdom which knows the real way in which all things exist.

Now someone may ask the following question:

Can't we just say that you know the real way all things exist when you know ultimate reality?

We admit that it would be true to say that the wisdom of a Buddha which knows the total quantity of things which exist would then also know the actual way in which all things exist. But you need to understand that we don't speak of the "wisdom which perceives the total quantity of things" only in contradistinction to the wisdom which perceives the way in which all things exist. Rather, we delineate this sort of wisdom from the point of view that it engages incidentally in every living being as it engages in ultimate truth, or the way that all things really exist.

यरमामुक्षःग्रेःबुन्यकामुन्यम् विन्यम् द्विन्यम् द्विन्यम् विक्यम् विक्यम्

And it is the case that truth of cessation in the mental continuum of a Buddha is an example of ultimate reality; but still we speak of a knowledge of it as a knowledge of the total amount of things to be known, in that we have specifically made the point that this kind of knowledge perceives it.

क्री-र्-र्-स्वान वान्त्रं स्वान्यः स्वायः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वान्यः स्वायः स्वान्यः स्वायः स्वायः स्

Certain people have not yet realized these inconceivable objects, and we say that a Buddha possesses high love because they undertake to teach these people the path to realize them. And they use their perfect power, and their wisdom and love, to help others eliminate the suffering and mental afflictions that these people still possess in their mental continuums.

र्ट. मृ.चीश्याचीश्याम् स्त्राचीश्याम् स्त्राचीश्याचीश

The first three qualities we've described then relate to the perfect ability to fulfill one's own needs, while the latter three relate to the perfect ability to fulfill the needs of others.



## The Asian Classics Institute

## Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Reading Four: The Sun of the Holy Dharma

Neither Is nor Isn't

Here begins our discussion of the Dharma Jewel, with the root text of The Latter Part followed by Gyaltsab Je's commentary:

। या प्रतिया से दासे के प्रति से से प्रति से दासे दासे के प्रति से दासे के प्रति से दासे के प्रति से दासे के प |मह्मायरस्य सुरादेशस्य मान्द्रम्य स्थानित्रम्य <u>| शूर दर रव रेव द्वापर वहें अश अहंद दश कें शहे अदे वा वद्दा</u>

यो नासन् न च सन् न चापि सदसन् नान्यः सतो नासतो ऽशक्यस् तर्कीयतुम् निरुत्तयपगतः प्रत्यात्मवेद्यः शिवः। तस्मै धर्मदिवाकराय विमलज्ञानावभासित्वषे सर्वालम्बण रागदोषतिमिरव्याघातकर्त्रे नमः।

I bow down to the sun of the holy Dharma: To that thing which cannot be imagined As either something which does not exist, Or which does exist, nor which does And doesn't, nor which is other than both; To that thing which is free of logic, Which is known by each one individually, Peace, where there is no more impurity, Possessed of the rays of wisdom's light; Which acts to destroy, completely, Our attachment and dislike and blindness

As we look upon all objects.

Here secondly is our explanation of the Jewel of the Dharma. We proceed in two steps: a bridge to the previous section, followed by an explanation of this new point. Here is the first step.

If we speak of the "Jewel of the Buddha" in terms of reaching the ultimate attainment, what we're saying is that—when you reach the Buddha Jewel—then this produces the Dharma Jewel, in the sense of the ultimate form of the cessation and the path. This though is not to imply that there is a progression between the two events as far as time: we could compare this to the expression, "Opening her mouth, she sleeps."

There is though a temporal progression in the sense that Buddhas turn the Wheel of the Dharma, and this produces both cessations and the path within the minds of their disciples. You should understand that both senses are indicated here.

Here secondly is our explanation, which will proceed in terms of the teaching, the explanation, and the correlation between the two. The first goes like this: "I bow down to the sun of that Dharma which is the highest, since it is that thing which those highest realized beings rely upon." There's no problem here if you say, alternately, that the sun refers more specifically to the truth of the path alone.

स्वान्त्वन्यत्। वर्षावायत्वन्त्रम् वित्तः वर्षावायः वर्षावयः वर्षावयः

What high qualities does this sun possess? These qualities are included into two of the four truths: the truth of cessation and the truth of the path. The truth of cessation itself involves two parts: natural purity, and achieved purity—and we shall explain each of these separately.

चीराहें वारा द्वारा भेरा प्रदान वाहे राष्ट्र स्वाराय देवा स्वाराय होता वाहिरा स्वाराय स्वाराय

The first of these two is not something that one can perceive with a state of mind which still involves duality. Neither can it be perceived through another. Rather, it is perceived by means of suspending duality.

८८.स्.च्री क्र्याचार त्तर प्रत्याचर त्याचे संग्रीय त्याचर स्त्रीय त्याचर स्त्रीय स्तरीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्र

Here we are speaking first of *that thing* which is *free* of the four extremes—four ways of projecting something onto a thing. It is free in this way because you *cannot imagine* it to be, through its very nature, either something *which does not exist;* or which *does exist;* or which *both exists and doesn't exist; or* which is *any other way* (which is to say, neither existent nor non-existent).

याश्रीयान्त्राद्धाः सुन्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त् वर्ष्योषाः पत्ते वर्षाः सुन्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रा

The way I've explained it here follows the translation of the commentary; using the translation of the root text version where the first three terms of negation are applied directly is somewhat less comfortable than doing it from the commentary.

If you explain the verse from the translation found in the root text, you'd say that non-existence is not something which exists by nature; existence is not something that exists by nature; and both existence and nonexistence together are not something that exists by nature. If however you explain the lines as expressing a freedom from the four extremes of projection in the sense of being neither ultimately existent nor ultimately non-existent, then you are just making nonsense noise, because then you miss completely the direct contradiction—a contradiction wherein one side of a pair represents all that is not the other side of the pair.

विं चें रुवा स्ट खुवार्थ त्य केंश्राचनेत्र यस चुवाय प्रत्या विश्व वित्र विश्व विष्व विश्व विश्व

Now suppose someone replies to this criticism as follows:

In actuality there's no such problem, because our own position is to accept neither the idea that things could exist in truth, nor the idea that they are devoid of any truth.

"Well then," we respond. "How is it then that you refute those who *do* believe in these two?"

यिश्वायुन्न स्ट्रेंट्शार्स्य स्थायुन्न । क्रिंशायुन्न स्ट्रेंट्शार्स्य स्थायुन्न स्थायुन्न स्थायुन्न स्थायुन्न स्थायुन्न स्थायुन्न स्थायुन्न स्थायुन्न

And suppose the person answers as follows:

When you establish on the one hand that things are empty of any true existence, it's because you have denied on the other hand that things have any true existence. As such, it would be a contradiction to accept that there could be one thing which were both.

दयायाची प्राचीयाक्ष प्रत्याचित्रका स्थापन्ते असूर प्रत्याया स्थापि स्थापि स्थापि स्थापि स्थापि स्थापि स्थापि स स्थापि स्थापि

But the fact is that you have to establish the lack of any true existence, on the one hand, by denying on the other hand that things could have any true existence. And so it's extremely contradictory not to accept either one of the sides of a direct contradiction.

वि.स्.श्रम् त्याः त्यात्र त्या विभग्न श्री यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्य त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्र त्यात्य त्यात्र त्यात्य त्यात्र त्यात्य त्यात्र त्यात्य त्याय त्यात्य त्याय त्यात्य त्याय त्यात्य त्याय त्

And now suppose that someone says:

Actually, we believe that you can't hold any positions at all on anything. Therefore none of your arguments can hurt us at all.

Well then, since you also wouldn't accept any notion of an ethical life at all, you're just headed for trouble, and nothing more. It's not as if you've had any deep understanding of things.

नम्बर्गत्र्र्यात्र्रेत्राक्ष्यात्र्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्य नम्बर्गत्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्

Now some people have said that the meaning of our particular text here represents the system of the Mind-Only School. This idea is wrong both according to the root text, and also the commentary. We'll say more about that later.

Here secondly is the explanation. This Dharma is not something that you can realize by depending on someone else, since—if you depended upon expression in the form of words; or upon any one of the various languages of the world; or upon some kind of

*logic*, where you said "This is this, because that is that"—then you would be "*free of*" or without any kind of realization of this Dharma that was realized in a complete way.

म्बर्ध्यान्याची त्याच्याच्या । त्याचीय देश क्षेत्र क्

Here thirdly is the correlation between the teaching and the explanation. This dharma is only something which can be *known by* realized beings, *each one individually*, in a way in which all duality is suspended, in a deep state of meditation. All of this is indicating—by way of mentioning the essence and the subject state of mind involved—that part of the truth of cessation which involves natural purity.

Here is our second point from above, which we discuss in two parts: how there is no more root, and how there is no more foundation. *Peace*, or the cessation which involves purity that is achieved, is reached through using a spiritual antidote to destroy any of the following: (1) the root of all suffering—ignorant actions and the mental afflictions of ignorant desire and so on; and (2) the foundation of all suffering, which is looking at things the wrong way—holding that they exist in truth—and the seeds for this tendency, whether it be the learned or inherent form.

याक्षेत्रायात्वयायदेत्रायाद्यायाद्या यात्रयायाद्या यात्रवायोत्यायदेत्रायायात्यायाद्यायायात्यायात्यायात्यायात्या

The second category then involves the truth of the path; here we cover the purity, the removing, and the antidote. The first is described with the words "There is *no more* of the *impurity* of any of the seeds that obstruct the wisdom which directly perceives the lack of any self-existence."

विश्वायम् निर्मान् केत्रायम् अभित्या विश्वाण्ये । विश्वा

The second is described with the words "It is *possessed of the rays of light of the wisdom* which perceives suchness directly." You should also realize that the wisdom which comes after the direct perception, still imbued with the wisdom of that deep meditation, beyond all images, also constitutes the truth of the path.

The third is described with the words "I bow down to the sun of the holy Dharma, which acts to destroy, completely, our tendency to look upon all objects—things such as visible form and the rest—and make them into something attractive, thus creating an attachment which believes that something could be pretty in and of itself; and also destroys that tendency to make these things into something unattractive, thus creating a dislike which believes that something could be the opposite; and finally destroys the blindness, the dark ignorance, itself.

यद्गार्थायहेषात्राच्यात्रेष्ठात्र्यात्राच्यात्रेष्ठात्र्यात्रेष्ठात्र्यात्रेष्ठात्र्यात्रेष्ठात्र्यात्रेष्ठात्रेष्ठात्र्यात्रेष्ठात्र

All of this is presenting, in a direct way, the truth of cessation of those on the greater way. And just because that involves the same sort of wording, it is also indicating that Dharma Jewel which is the object of the aspirations of the self-made buddhas. Even though that's not what the actual text here is talking about, you can understand it from the verse.

The Way it All Begins

Our second point from above will be covered in two parts: presenting the stages by which one becomes trapped in the cycle of suffering; and identifying the principal causes of this cycle. For the first of these we'll give an overview; then an expanded explanation; and finally a summary.

त्रां की व्याप्त क्ष्में प्राप्त क्ष्में क्ष्में प्राप्त क्ष्में क्षे क्ष्में क्षे क्ष्में क्षे क्षे क्ष्में क्षे क्षे क्षे क्षे क्षे क्षे क्

Here is the first. Now the obstacle for achieving freedom is that impure state of mind which grasps to things as existing in truth. No matter what object we focus upon, this state of mind grows, causing us to believe that the object we are seeing exists in truth. The kind of object we are focussing upon—the basis from which this state of mind grows—could be the person, or their heaps. Our way of looking at it then plants a mental seed, and had its own previous mental seed too. That seed has begun to sprout within us in its manifest form, and from this grows our feelings of ignorant liking for something.

र्वाम्यश्चाम्भ्राम्भ्रेष्ठ्यात्रे। वयात्यात्रयायश्चेत्यायात्रभ्यात्यम्भ्रेत्यायात्रम्भ्रम्यायात्रम्यायात्रम्य विषयात्रम्भ्रम्भ्रम्यत्यात्रम्भ्रम्भ्रम्यायात्रम्भ्रम्यायात्रम्भ्रम्यायात्रम्भ्रम्यायात्रम्भ्रम्यायात्रम्

Here next is how the three poisons grow in us. People who are still children start to feel ignorant desire because the mental seed which was dormant grows, making them see things in a wrong way—as being attractive or whatever when they are not actually this way by nature. That is to say, they are making things seem attractive.

वर्र्याश्वातवुःक्ष्याःभ्रथःत्वेदान्चीःम्ब्रायद्वः स्थायाः स्या याष्ट्रः स्याप्यः स्थाः नव्यक्षेत्रः स्थाः स्या

Or else they start to feel ignorant disliking for things—and they are giving themselves the emotion of anger. Or else they start to get the blindness of ignorance itself: looking at things the wrong way, and for this reason planting another dormant seed.

स्राया प्रियाया स्त्री वर्ष्ट्रा क्रियाय होता प्रायाया स्त्री स्

Here secondly we identify the main causes for the cycle. The reason why we develop feelings of ignorant liking for things is our tendency to hold that things exist in truth—our wrong way of looking at things—along with the seeds for this tendency. Then making things attractive or whatever, looking at them the wrong way, is a way of looking at things that can focus either on the person or on the heaps—looking at them as true. As such, it is all our mind's fault.

यादायात्र स्थान्त स्थान स्थान

The habits of ignorantly liking things, and the rest, occur with those who are stuck in seeing things the wrong way. People like this start from this foundation, and go on to carrying out deeds, or karma—actions of the three doors, whether they be meritorious, or non-meritorious, or what we call "unshifting" karma. And it is only from this kind of karma, only from this kind of connection, that one crosses the border into their next life.

म्। विश्वास्त्रीयायद्वास्त्रस्य स्वर्ष्यात्वस्य विश्वास्त्रस्य विष

Here third is our summary. The process described above is found in the words that go "Therefore those children who possess the mental seed for holding that things exist truly begin to 'grasp to signs' that these things exist truly..." up to "...and then they are born, and this is the source of suffering."

त्र. त्र्यायदे त्र्यायदे क्ष्याय स्ट्रियाय स्

Here is our second point from before. One may ask the following question:

What is the main cause of the cycle of suffering—what is it that, if we cannot eliminate it, will keep us trapped in the cycle of suffering? What is it that, if we can eliminate it, will allow us to attain freedom?

लट्ट्यायाहास्यायाहित्र्याचित्रायात्र्यायात्र्यायात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात् ह्यायाद्यायाहास्यायाहित्र्यायाद्यायात्र्य

People who are children are trapped in the cycle of suffering because there is something that they fail to understand correctly, in just the right way. And this thing is their own essence: the suchness which is still involved with impurity—the fact that both the person and their heaps are empty of any nature of their own. Their failure to understand this causes the entire negative side of their life: it causes all their mental afflictions, and then makes them collect karma, and ultimately causes them to take again a suffering birth.

यदेशक्षित्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्ष यद्याद्यादेशक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक

And so what is the text trying to say here? It is saying that if you fail to understand your own essence—that emptiness of any nature of your own—then you will need to circle

again in the cycle of suffering. And it is saying too that, if you hope to free yourself from the cycle, well then you must seek to understand this essence.

### Curing the Sickness

Birth and death in the cycle of suffering
Has no beginning; and the ways
We can move through it are five.
Shit can never have a fragrance;
There is no happiness in the five types of birth.
The pain in this cycle is,
Every moment, like the pain
Produced by the touch of fire,
A weapon, or salt, or the like.
They send down a great rain
Of the holy Dharma from the clouds
Of their compassion, bringing a final end.

# |८८:मु.धु र्वेया.यर्जिता.ची.श्रा.४८.मे.वहुल.च.लका.धु.खुर्थ.सूरी

The first point from above is covered in the words, "The fire of suffering is banished, and then..."

The second point has two parts: the details of the suffering that compassion focusses upon; and the details of the method to bring this suffering to an end. The first part itself

has two sections, covering the place it is in which we circle, and the problems of continuing to circle there.

प्रचतः त्राच्याः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः त्राच्याः त्राच्याः स्वतः त्राच्याः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्व प्रच्याः स्वतः स

Here is the first. There is absolutely no beginning end to the process we have gone through, going from one *birth and death* to another in a continuous stream, due to our karma and mental afflictions. And if we don't make any special efforts to stop this cycle, then there won't be any stopping end to it either. And so we can say that this *cycle of suffering* has *neither beginning* nor end. *The ways we can move* through the cycle *are* the *five* types of beings.

त्त्री

स्त्री

श्रेम्प्रस्ति।

As for the cycle's problems, the fact is that *shit can never have a fragrance*. Just so, *there is no* genuine *happiness* no matter which of the *five types of birth* you happen to take. In fact, our attempts to get some relief from suffering are all we have to consider real happiness. And so *the pain* we experience *in this cycle is*, for *every moment* we live, *just like the pain produced by the touch of a fire*, or the cut of a *knife*, or the cold of snow, or having *salt* poured into an open wound. It is never anything other than simple pain.

यम्बुःचम्यसूत्र्यां। वस्यावे क्रियायाः वस्यावे क्रियायाः क्रियायाः विद्यायाः विद्यायः विद्यायाः विद्यायः विद्यायः

The details of the method cover three parts themselves: presentations on the teaching of the Dharma; utilizing this teaching to finally wake up to the problems of the cycle; and meditating upon the nature of the four truths in order to attain freedom.

### वि.चर:ब्रेट्रे.त.रचःमें.उच्चयशःविटःत्तचःतशःविक्रःचयुःक्रैयोःचर्कतःउक्त्यःवर्ष्ट्रश्वशःवर्षःव्यःच्यः वित्रःच्यः रटःमुःब्रे। ध्योबःइयुःश्चैषःजन्नःर्यः त्युःक्ष्यःश्चितः च्युःक्षेयाः चर्कतः व्युःक्षेयाः चर्कतः द्राः

Here is the first. "They act to destroy the pain of the cycle, sending down a great rain of the holy Dharma from the clouds of their compassion, bringing the suffering to a final end, sending down the final rain."

विश्वास्त्रित्वास्त्वास्त्रित्वास्त्वास्त्रित्वास्त्वास्त्रित्वास्त्वास्त्रित्वास्त्रित्वास्त्रित्वास्त्रित्वास्त्रित्वास्त्रित्वास्तित्वस्तित्वास्त्रित्वास्त्रित्वस्तित

Among the worldly deities, there is the suffering Of dying and moving; among humans, There is the suffering of seeking possessions. Because they have realized these points, Those of wisdom have no desire to become Even the greatest among gods and men. They follow after wisdom, and after Their belief in the high speech of Those Gone Thus. They have eyes to see, for they understand What was said: "This is suffering, This is the cause, and this the cessation.

Here is the second. "Among the worldly deities, there is the suffering of dying and moving to a new rebirth. Among humans, there are the sufferings of seeking possessions and so on." Because they have realized these points, there are people who have been able to develop the actual form of the aspiration to achieve freedom, and to gain the wisdom that has the power to grasp the path to freedom. As such, they have no desire to become

even the greatest among gods and men: worldly deities like Shakra, the king of the gods, and the human World Emperors.

द्रायभाक्ती, सर्वेद्राय, स्वात्त्र्य, विश्वात्त्र्य, स्वात्त्र्य, स्वात्त्र्य, स्वात्त्र्य, स्वात्त्र्य, स्वात्त्र, स्वा

The reason for this is that, first of all, they possess the inner condition for this attitude: they *follow after* the *wisdom* where they see things the right way, grasping fully the problems of the cycle of pain, and the benefits of freedom. They also possess the external condition for the attitude: they *follow* their faith, *their belief in the high speech of Those Gone Thus*. That is, *they have eyes to see—for they understand* what the Buddhas meant when they *said*, "These impure heaps, these parts of a normal person, *are suffering*. Our deeds and mental afflictions *are the cause*: they are the truth of the source of *suffering*. Stopping this suffering is the truth of *cessation*, and the wisdom which perceives the lack of a self-nature to things is the truth of the path."

वित्र वे स्वर वु त्र त्यों क्या स्वर व्या स्वर त्या स्य स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्य स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्य स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्य स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्य स्य स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्वर त्या स्य स्वर त्या स्वर

व्याधिर् ज्ञेयो व्याधिहेतुः प्रहेयः स्वास्थ्यं प्राप्यं भेषजं सेव्यम् एवम्। दुःखं हेतुस् तन्निरोधो ऽथ मर्गो ज्ञेयं हेय स्पर्शितव्यो निषेव्यः।

Our illness is something to be understood; The cause is something to be eliminated; Health is something to be achieved; And medicine is something to be relied upon. Suffering, and its cause, and its end And just so the path are things

To be understood, eliminated, Contacted, and relied upon.

च्यान्त्रा व्यान्त्रात्त्रे व्याने स्थाने स

Here next is our third point, which is meditating upon the nature of the four truths in order to attain freedom. Now if you don't fully understand the problems that being sick with some kind of illness brings to you, then you can't really get the full desire to rid yourself of that illness. Neither will you really aspire fully to following the method for removing the illness. Thus we say that one should, at the very outset, come to a certain *understanding* of the problems of our *illness*.

न्या स्वाप्त स्वापत स्वाप्त स

And if you fail to rid yourself of the cause of your illness, then you will never be able to get rid of the illness itself. Once you see this, you will see that *the cause of an illness is something to be eliminated*, while stopping the illness and staying in a state of *health* and happiness *is something to be achieved*. Finally, the *medicine* that stops the cause of the illness *is something to be relied upon*.

Just so, we must come to *understand*—at the very outset—that impermanence and *suffering* and so on are, on a very broad basis, a kind of pain, a problem for us. And this pain is not something that you can eliminate simply in the way that you would stop and pull a thorn out of your foot. Rather, we need to stop the pain by eliminating its cause. When we see this, we realize that the *cause*—the truth of the source of suffering—is something we need to *eliminate*.

### यश्चर्यायम्ब्रित्यायम्ब्रित्यां अश्वरायम्बर्धत्यस्य निष्यः देश्वराष्ट्रस्य स्थात् । स्थित्यः स्थात्यः स्यात्यः स्थात्यः स्यात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्

Once we see that the source of suffering is something that we *can* eliminate, we see that the truth of *the end* of suffering—where we stop this suffering in our own being—is something to be *contacted*, and something that we can actually ourselves bring about. We see then as well that, in order to bring this cessation about, we need to *rely upon the path*, and habituate ourselves to it, constantly. Following this process acts to bring us to freedom, to nirvana.

#### Gaining the Dharma Jewel

The following piece on how to achieve the Dharma Jewel is from The Cloud of Offerings, which Pleases the Wise (ACIP digital text S0195), a monastic textbook for Sera Mey written by Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748).

### क्र्यान्त्रीत् सक्र्यां मी सक्र में देन मिन स्त्रीय मिन स्त्रे स्वर्णा स्त्री स्वर्णा स्वर्णा

The definition of the Dharma Jewel is:

One of the enlightened pair among the four truths found in the mental continuum of a realized being (an arya), subsumed by either the truth of the end of pain or the truth of the path to this end.

र्ट्यान्यते स्वर्त्या स्वर्त्य स्वर्य स्वर्त्य स्वर्त्य स्वर्त्य स्वर्य स्वर्त्य स्वर्त्य स्वर्यः स्वर्त्य स्वर्त्य स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्त्य स्वर्त्य स्वर्यः स्वयः स्वर्य

In name only, this can be divided into the apparent Dharma Jewel and the ultimate Dharma Jewel. The first of these consists of the Dharma Jewel in the form of the teachings, such as the more extensive, the medium, and the brief presentations of the perfection of wisdom. The second consists of the truth of the end of suffering and the truth of the path to this end.

The Dharma Jewel is possessed of eight high qualities, for it is possessed of the three high qualities of the truth of the end of suffering; the three high qualities of the truth of the path to this end; the more general high quality of the truth of the end which includes the first three; and the more general high quality of the truth of the path to this end which includes the latter three—which all together makes eight. And this is so because, as *The Latter Part* states,

প্রমান্যমুদ্রমানর শ্রীমা

अचिन्त्याद्वयनिष्कल्पशुद्धिव्यक्तिरिपक्षतः। यो येन च विरागो ऽसौ धर्मः सत्यद्विलक्षणः।

The Dharma can be defined as follows: It cannot be thought about, and is never Involved with the two. It is free of conceptual thinking, And is pure, and clear, and the antidote. It is that with which one achieves the freedom From desire, and includes two of the truths.

न्यास्त्रस्यायाविक्रहें मायोवे ह्वें सास्यायिक्षेत्रः है स्वायाविक्रायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्यः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्यः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्यः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्यः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायः स्वायायिक्षेत्रः स्वायायः स्वयायः स्वयाय

This verse is making the following respective points. First of all, the Dharma Jewel possesses the three following qualities. *It* is *not* something that *can be thought about* with complete accuracy in a logical way, using the reasoning of four permutations or such. *Nor* does is it *ever involved with* either of the *two* of karma or mental afflictions. And finally *it* is totally *free* of any *conceptual* way of *thinking* that is not seeing things in the right way.

स्टाची यहें त्र स्ट्रेस स्ट्र

The Jewel is also possessed of a high quality of *purity*, in that the way it perceives objects is never infected with the mental afflictions. Because it realizes the way that things really are, it possesses a high quality of *clarity*. And finally it possesses the high quality of *the antidote*, for it destroys everything that would work against it.



#### The Asian Classics Institute



#### Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1
Teachings of the Future Buddha:
The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Reading Five: Death and Realized Beings

How Free is a Realized Being?

We begin with a verse from the root text of The Latter Part, and then move on to Gyaltsab Je's commentary.

विस्त्रास्यस्य त्रक्ते द्रान्तः स्वाद्याः स्व

मृत्युव्याधिजरादुःखमूलम् आर्येर् अपोद्धृतम् । कर्मक्केशवसाभातिस् तद् अभावान् न तेषु तत् ।

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

वित्वेद्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्या स्वितः स्वाध्याः स्व

### जन्ममृत्युजराव्याधिन् दर्शयन्ति कृपात्मकाः। जात्यादिविनिवृत्ताश्च यथाभूतस्य दर्शनात्।

Because they have seen
High purity, just as it is,
They have gone far beyond
Birth and the rest.
Nonetheless, they are the
Very image of compassion,
Pretending to take birth,
And die, and age, and have sickness.

तिक्षेत्रः तात्राच्यः त्यात्रेत्रः हो । यत्राचात्रेत्रः तात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रे देश्चेतः त्यात्रः त्यात्यः त्यात्यः त्यात्यः त्यात्रः त्यात्यः त

Here is the second point from before. The realm in which *realized beings* act is one in which they *have ripped out, from the* very *root*, the sufferings of birth, *death* and the rest. Those who have achieved this state though—those who are at the first bodhisattva level—are moved by compassion to enter the realm in which people act who are, spiritually, only children. As such they *pretend to take rebirth* and the like. And thus they possess special ways of acting as a friend for every living being, and the highest of *compassion*.

Here next is the second point from even earlier in the text, which has two parts itself. The first is a description of how these bodhisattvas stay in the world but are never defiled by its impurities. The second connects the metaphor and its meaning.

### 

Here is the first. Bodhisattvas from the first bodhisattva level up to the seventh *have* gone far beyond all the worlds of normal beings—the listeners and self-made buddhas. Nonetheless, they never waver from this show of taking rebirth and the rest in the world.

And even though they do stay in this show, working for the good of the world, they act and remain in the world in such a way that they are never infected by its impurities: they never lose themselves to the power of the world's mental afflictions; they cannot be overpowered by the troubles of the truth of suffering and the truth of the cause of suffering, and thus unable to do what others need; or anything of the like.

प्रेश्वराद्धी हैं प्रेराय के प्रेश्वराद्धी का स्थान के प्रेश्वराद्धी का स्थान के स्

Here is the second point. A lotus flower grows in the water, but is never sullied by the water. Just so, bodhisattvas engage in their special work: they take birth in the world but are never sullied by worldly things. And this is because they have liberated themselves from any need to take birth or to die through the power of karma and mental afflictions: they have total power over whether they choose to take birth or not.

#### The Seven Lifetimes

It is very typical for someone who sees emptiness directly on the track of the greater way—that is, and arya bodhisattva—to perceive in the hours that follow that they will become a fully enlightened Buddha within exactly seven more lifetimes; which is an

unspeakably glorious achievement for a being who has already spent an **infinite** number of lifetimes in the cycle of pain.

Following are three references to this idea of a "seven-timer." The first is from The Garland of White Lotuses, the Essence of Eloquence (ACIP digital text S0012), a textbook for Sera Mey Monastery written by the master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568). This is an overview of a subject called "The Twenty Practitioners," which is a complete presentation of all the permutations possible as a person moves through the different tracks and their paths.

The second piece is from the Sera Mey textbook that gives an overview of the perfection of wisdom (digital text S0009); it was written by the same author. The third is from a dialectical analysis on this same subject (S6815) composed by Sera Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen (1469-1546), the primary writer of the Sera Jey textbook series.

# बियाना क्रियं बियाना मुन्याना स्थान स्यान स्थान स्यान स्थान स्थान

The definition of a stream enterer who is a seven-timer is as follows: any stream enterer who eliminates spiritually undesirable qualities in stages, and who belongs to the type that still needs to take seven similar kinds of rebirth in the desire realm.

\* \* \*

# ह्येया पर्ने ता से द्वार प्रति । से द्वार प्रति । से प

It is not necessary the case that if something constitutes the truth of suffering then it also constitutes the gross demon of the heaps. This is because even though a stream enterer who has seven lifetimes to go does constitute the truth of suffering, they do not constitute the demon of the heaps. And this is because they do constitute the Jewel of the Community.

Nor is it even the case that this demon of the heaps always represents something to be eliminated. This is because of the fact that—even though the heaps that we have taken on, this human body endowed with the 18 qualities of leisure and fortune—does constitute the demon of the heaps, it is not something to be eliminated. And this is because it is highly commended, in both the scriptures and the commentaries upon them, as being an exceptional basis that we can use for our practice of the holy Dharma.

Nor also is it the case that the "gross" demon of the heaps is always something which is manifest. This is because—even though the seeds of mental afflictions constitutes the gross form of this demon—they are not the manifest form of this demon. And this is because they are not something mental.

Nor further is it the case that anyone who belongs to the group of demons that try to obstruct our attempts to get past the other three demons is always the fourth demon, the one that we call "the demon of the divine youth." And this is because there are animals that act this way. And this is because there are serpentine beings who act this way.

\* \* \*

Moreover, let us consider a bodhisattva who is on the third level. It actually *is* the case that they have destroyed the demon of the heaps in its gross form.

This is because they have destroyed the impure heaps that occurred through the power of karma and mental afflictions.

Suppose you disagree with the statement we've given as our reason. This statement though *is* true, because a bodhisattva who is staying on the path of liberation within the path of seeing on the greater way has eliminated having to take birth due to karma and mentaal afflictions. And this is true because because *The Latter Part* includes those lines that say,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root.

Suppose someone comes and says,

Is it then necessarily the case that—if someone is a bodhisattva on the first bodhisattva level—they have eliminated the impure heaps which have occurred through the power of karma and mental afflictions? Because isn't it necessarily the case that—if someone is a bodhisattva at the second bodhisattva level—then they have eliminated this same thing?

स्वार्था वर्तेन्या वर्तेन्या वर्तेन्या व्याप्यात्रास्त्रीत्र विष्यात्र विषयात्र विषय

[Still the "other guy":]

And you can't disagree with this reason we've given, because you've already accepted it. But suppose you do agree to our proposition. Are you saying then that—just after a bodhisattva on the path of accumulation attains the path of seeing on the greater way—then they no longer possess any impure heaps that have occurred through karma and mental afflictions? Because you've agreed!

# दर्र्न् के मुक्ता मिन्य के स्थान के स्थ

And yet you can't agree, because (1) the bodhisattva on the path of preparation *does* possess those heaps, and (2) the one on the path of seeing and the one on the path of preparation share the same bodily base.

In answer we reply, "The one doesn't necessarily follow from the other."

#### Realized Beings and the Truth of Suffering

The first piece here on realized beings and the truth of suffering is drawn again from the Overview of Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye. It is followed by a selection from the Sera Mey monastic textbook on the perfection of wisdom (S0195) by Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748).

Suppose someone comes and says:

Anything that constitutes the truth of suffering automatically constitutes the cycle of suffering.

Consider then the impure vessel of the world. Are you saying that it constitutes the cycle of suffering? Because it *does* constitute the truth of suffering.

And this is true because The Compendium says,

What is the truth of suffering? Understand that it is covered by both the suffering living beings who take birth and by the place in which they take birth.

Now suppose you agree to our first proposition. It *isn't* the case though that the impure vessel of the world is the cycle of suffering, because this vessel is the *place* in which you circle, through the power of karma and mental afflictions.

Consider, moreover, a stream enterer who has seven lifetimes to go. Are you saying that *they* constitute the cycle of suffering?

Because they *do* constitute the truth of suffering. Because they *are* a suffering living being who has taken birth, helplessly, in the actual place of the cycle of pain, due to their karma and mental afflictions.

Now suppose you agree that they do constitute the cycle of suffering. The truth though is that they do not constitute the cycle of suffering, because they constitute the person who is *circling* in that cycle.

हीरा विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्यात्वार्थ्यात्वार्थ्यात्वार्थ्यात्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्या विस्तित्वार्थ्यात्वार्थयात्वार्थ्यात्वार्थ्यात्वार्थयात्वार्थ्यात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्यात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्यात्वार्थयात्वार्यात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्यात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्यात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्थयात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्वार्यात्वार्वार्यात्वार्वार्वार्यात्वात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्यात्वार्वार्यात्वार्

Furthermore, both the first and second proofs we've given for why this person is not the *cycle* of suffering *are* correct. And this is because we have to say that:

What makes us circle in the cycle? We do so through the power of karma and mental afflictions.

Who is it that circles in the cycle? It is those suffering living beings who, through the power of their karma and mental afflictions, helplessly take birth.

To what are we chained, to circle in the cycle? We are chained to the heaps that we have taken on.

Where do we circle in the cycle? We circle within the impure vessel of the world.

What this implies is that the various components of a doer and what they do are not all a single thing, with regard to the cycle of suffering.

\* \* \*

Suppose someone comes and says the following:

The definition of the truth of suffering is: "Any impure thing that is taken in by either the vessel of the world or its contents."

The definition of the truth of the source of suffering is: "Any impure thing that is taken in by either karma or mental afflictions."

Consider then the tendency, within the mental continuum of a bodhisattva who is a realized being, to grasp to some self-nature to a person. Are you saying that this tendency is one of the things you have defined above? Because it does fit one of the definitions you've given above.

It *does* fit one of these definitions, because it is something which is impure and is taken in by the contents of the vessel of the world.

It is taken in by the contents of the vessel, because it is a mental affliction.

It is a mental affliction, because it is the tendency to grasp to some self-nature to a person.

Now suppose you agree to our question above. Are you saying then that the truth of suffering exists in the mental continuum of a realized being who is a bodhisattva? Because, after all, you've agreed.

Suppose you do agree. Are you saying then that they possess, within their mental continuum, the sufferings of birth, aging, sickness, and death? Because, again, you've agreed.

And yet you can't agree, because—as The Latter Part says,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root.

Consider, moreover, this same tendency. Are you saying that it constitutes the truth of the source of suffering? Because it is something which is impure and taken in by either

karma, or mental afflictions, or both.

This is so the case, because it is something which is impure and taken in by mental afflictions.

This is so the case, because it is a mental affliction.

Now suppose you agree to our last question. Are you saying then that the bodhisattva we mentioned has the truth of suffering in their mental continuum?

And if you agree to this last question, we've already disproved that idea before.

#### To the Body of Illusion

Is it possible for one who has seven lifetimes to go to speed up the process? How could seeing emptiness, or the clear light, within ones lifetime help one attain enlightenment in that very life, or even in the moment of ones death? The following answers to these quesetions are from a secret text by Je Tsongkapa himself entitled The Revelation of Vital Points of All the Secrets (S5281).

## यहेब.त.शह्य.टी.ची.ता.वी.यद्र.शबर.ब्री.शदु.श्रीर.र्जट.यर.चीत्.श्रीश.ताद्र.यत्रवे.

Here is the second point. Suppose a person has reached the end of the stage of creation, and has gone as far as the "isolation of mind" step in the stage of completion—but has no opportunity in that particular lifetime to practice some one or more of the three kinds of high activity. And then suppose that they die, having mentally made the following resolution beforehand—

At the moment of my death, I will bring to mind ultimate reality: the clear light of death. At the end of the death process then I will rise up in the illusory body.

त्र त्रीं र.प्रे. मुंद्र प्रमेश त्र व्याप्त प्रमान प्रमान प्रमेश प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमान प्रमेश प्रमान प्रम प्रमान प

The person then uses the various steps of death as steps to enter the clear light. The clear light of death appears to them, and the power of it enables them to attain the body of illusion instead of what would be, for someone else, the inbetween state. As *The Summary of the Activities* states,

यत्रा। न्यक्तित्रायाः स्वित्रायाः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वित्याः स्वित्ययाः स्व व्यापाः स्वित्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वित्याः स्वित्याः स्वित्याः स्वित्ययाः स्व

Now you may ask the following question:

Suppose a practitioner has seen the truth, but then because of constant familiarity with previous mental seeds they get distracted by business like farming, or trading, or being famous, or anything of the like—and so they fail to engage in the three high activities.

लट संस् है तकट च हुट स्वाप्त तकी मा बेश है स्वाप्त तकी मा बेश है स्वाप्त तकी स्वाप्त स्वीप्त स्वाप्त स्वीप्त स स्वाप्त से स्वाप्त स्वीप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वीप्त स्वाप्त स्व

Or suppose that another practitioner has failed to carry out the required activities—they were unable to perform all the rituals as prescribed by the secret books, because they didn't have the material means to do so. When these kinds of people come to the moment of death, do they pass on to another rebirth, or can they become Vajradhara, the Keeper of the Diamond, himself?

The answer to this question is as follows.

यर वर्षीय तर्द्र अ.स.प्रेंग्न अ.सर्गीय त्राचित्र । इंचान तद्र अ.स.प्रेंग्न तर्मीय तर्मीय त्राचित्र वर्ष तद्र विष्य वर्ष तद्र विष्य देश देश होते ।

Now first of all it is beyond a shred of a doubt that, if you are a person who has realized the completion stage, then if you do everything needed you will go beyond all grief, and attain nirvana, here in the world itself.

याञ्ची प्राप्त होत् केत्र केत्र प्राप्त केत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त केत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त केत्र क्षेत्र क्ष

So now suppose there is a person who knows suchness, but who—because they haven't been able to bring together the necessary material means—is unable to undertake the various high activities as they are described. Given the above, they could bring to mind, purely, the following thought:

Now I will give up all other ways of viewing this world. The process of dying is ultimate reality; and rebirth is deceptive reality.

चक्रींट्री। बुश्यापटःद्वायार्थःचीत्रःचीत्रःवक्षयाय्येत्रःचीत्रःवित्रःच्याःचीत्रःब्रिश्यःचहत्रःवित्रःवित्रःवित्रःवित्रःवित्र वित्रःप्राचित्रःव्याय्यःचीत्रःचीत्रःवक्षयाय्येत्रःचीत्रःचित्रःचित्रःवित्रःवित्रःवित्रःवित्रःवित्रःवित्रःवित्रःव

In very rare cases then, a person like this could enter the clear light, and drop their normal heaps. Then they could decide to take themselves through the various steps of the practice of blessing oneself, making a firm resolution that "Now I will rise as the deity."

# रि.यम् य.वम्म.यम् सम्म.यम् सम्म.यम् म्यात्वा । विम्यास्य सम्मी । विम्यास्य सम्मात्वा । विष्य सम्य सम्मात्वा । विष्य सम्य सम्मात्वा । विष्य सम्मात्वा । विष्य सम्मात्वा । विष्

If they are able to hold this thought in mind, and keep their mind from going into any other birth, then they won't go. Thus then they will reach omniscience itself.

डुश.ड्रच.कुच.कुच.वस्त्रच्यात्र.त.क्ष्यात्र.तक्ष्यःक्षी.चयःचीश्वरक्षःच्यात्र.त्यात्र.त्यात्र.त्यात्र.त्यात्र.त यर्ज्यःक्षेत्र.देश्च्यात्र.व.क्षेट्र.च्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व अत्वित्यःक्षेत्र.देश्च्यात्र.व.क्षेट्र.च्यात्र.व्यात्य.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्य.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्य.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्य.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्यःव्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्यःवयात्र.व्यात्यात्यःत्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्र.व्यात्यःयः

It is stated in scripture that, if you are able to achieve the body of illusion, then you will definitely become enlightened in that same life. Now here we have this person who has not achieved the illusory body, but who perceives the clear light directly. *The Latter Part* includes that verse which goes,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

What the verse is saying is that realized beings on the greater way have eliminated forever any need to die through the power of karma.

बुट्यस्य विद्या के स्वार्थ के स्व विद्या स्वार्थ के स्

The Levels of the Bodhisattva also says that it is completely impossible for someone who has attained one of the bodhisattva levels to be impoverished as far as material needs. And here when they talk about someone who hasn't been able to eliminate a death that comes by the power of karma, or someone who is doing what we've described because they lacked sufficient material resources, they are talking about a "normal" person—one who hasn't seen emptiness directly—that has been unable to achieve the illusory body.

त्रक्षःश्वेत्वतः व्याप्तः म्याप्तः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्तः स्व त्रम्भः श्वेत्वाः स्वाप्तः स्व स्वाप्तः स्व

When this person attains the illusory body after they die, this is the very beginning of their having attained that body; whereas when we talk about someone perceiving the clear light directly in this context, they must be someone who has already attained the illusory body before that. As such, when we talk about someone "bringing the clear light to mind" here, it is not the kind of "bringing to mind" where you have perceived the clear light directly.

याश्चिर्याहे हेयान्य स्ट्राच्या स्ट्राच्या

At the end of the death process then, you attain the illusory body in place of the

intermediate state. As such, a holy body comes into being which has the appearance of Vajrasattva, the Warrior of Diamond, produced from inner winds and thoughts. It's not though the case that you just go willy-nilly into the intermediate state, and then need, after the fact, to attain the illusory body. And so the person attains the illusory body, then practices the remainder of the path, and then based on that body attains enlightenment itself.

#### Death and the Way of Mantra

Je Tsongkapa further has this short piece to say on death and realized beings (aryas). It comes from his Lamp that Illuminates, Totally, the Teaching on the Five Steps (S5302).

And it has also been stated that, when you achieve the fourth level, the three appearances are pure. This means that one has perceived ultimate reality directly, and then—as *The Latter Part* states—

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

What this is saying is that realized beings on the greater way in the form of the perfections eliminate all need to die through the power of karma and mental afflictions. And if even *they* can achieve this, then needless to say realized beings on the greater way in the form of the secret word can achieve it.

The Realized Taking Birth Again

What does it mean to say that a realized being has destroyed birth? Je Tsongkapa sheds some light on this subject in his String of Golden Beads (S5412):

On this subject too the following has been said.

If the cause of taking this rebirth is actual mental afflictions, then we'd have to say that bodhisattvas who are realized beings take rebirth through the power of karma. And when they take rebirth in one of the different types of birth then, they must suffer from the pain of that particular birth. But this too doesn't make sense, since *The Latter Part* has that statement that says,

> Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

### या वन्यायान्दावरुषायते यसान्दार्भेष्ठा स्वायसान्त्री। विषयसान्या स्वायसान्त्रीय विषयसान्त्री।

The commentary too states that:

What is the cycle of suffering? It is the reflection of the three realms in the sphere of that which has no impurity. It is the cycle of suffering in that it is a product that occurs through that which has no impurity. And nirvana is the same thing, in that it is not a product that occurs through karma and mental afflictions.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \* \*

This same subject is also broached by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568) in his overview of the perfection of wisdom, a textbook for Sera Mey (S0009):

# यि देवा वित्रेयः यक्षित् क्षेत्रं क्षेत्

Suppose someone comes and says the following:

The mental afflictions presented here refer to actual mental afflictions; and this is because the mental affliction of craving for the desire realm must be the cause for bodhisattvas who are realized beings to take rebirth.

याश्रीद्रशास्त्र होत्रा अप्तेष्ठ का स्वास्त्र होत्य विषयः विषयः होत्य विषयः व

And this must be the case, for both the greater commentaries say,

They eliminate dormant seeds that are taken in by ignorance and by view, but it is not the impurities for desire and craving—for

they take rebirth purposely.

पश्चित्रायः क्षेत्र अंद्रश्रायश्चेत्र श्री । बेरात्र।

यश्चित्र प्रसास्त्र प्रसायश्चेत्र श्री । बेरात्र।

यश्चित्र प्रसायश्चित्र प्रसायश्चेत्र श्री । बेरात्र।

वश्चित्र प्रसायश्चित्र श्री । बेरात्र।

वश्चित्र प्रसायश्चित्र श्री । बेरात्र।

वश्चित्र प्रसायश्चित्र श्री । बेरात्र।

But on the other hand it is stated that mental afflictions are defined as "that which disturbs the peace of mind of the person who has it," and it is also stated that none of the problems of the mental afflictions can ever grow at any of the levels, since by that point the power that could cause one to take birth or whatever due to being at the mercy of mental afflictions has been destroyed.

The point you've brought up here though is incorrect, for it contradicts both scriptural authority and logic.

स्रोता । शुकाःचीरः उत्तयाकाः तकाः कृतः कृति निर्मात् कृतः विष्णः कृतः विष्णः विषणः विष्णः वि

It contradicts scriptural authority because it is stated in scripture that bodhisattvas who are realized beings no longer take birth through the power of mental afflictions. As *The Latter Part* says,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

यास्रीर्यायद्भीर्यायद्भी देव, य्वट्यायास्य स्थायास्य व्याप्त स्थायाय्य स्थाय स्थाय

And here is why it contradicts reason.

Are you saying that—when a bodhisattva who is a realized being takes rebirth—then something involved with mental affliction has to act as the cause for this birth because the person is unable to take birth in any way at all that, due to the power of their compassion and prayers, they wish to take birth? Or are you saying that—even though they don't have any mental afflictions—they are overcome, as they die and move on, by the fear that they are going to stop altogether; and thus call up the craving that clings to the impure heaps, and due to this take birth and the rest? Which one is it?

ने निहेश मा अ से निहास के के के के कि स्वास के स

Either way, you have to be wrong, for you would contradict the position that these bodhisattvas have destroyed the power that causes one to take rebirth because you are at the mercy of things involved with mental afflictions.

And there is another reason too why it is incorrect to say that it has to be mental afflictions that act as the cause for bodhisattvas who are realized beings to take birth. This is that—if someone were to take birth due to the power of mental afflictions—then by this same power they would have to helplessly go through the experiences of illness and aging and death and the rest.

And if this were the case, then these people would be unable to fulfill even just their own needs as they wished to—much less act in extensive ways to fulfill the needs of others.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

Here is another debate on this subject, from the same text:

यि देया त्युवास दे विभावा देश स्टर्ध देश हेते स्टर्भी खेट स हेवास वाहेस गा हैं वास य

Once the preceding position has been disproved, some people come and make the following argument:

A person completes, from the first bodhisattva level, both eliminating all the undesirable qualities eliminated by listeners and self-made buddhas and realizing all that they realize. This is true for the following reason.

त्रान्त्राची त्रेन् श्री न्यन त्यम श्रेन त्या वर्षे अप्याप्त स्था विष्य श्री न्या विष्य श्री न्या विष्य श्री न्या विष्य श्री व्या विष्य श्री न्या विष्य श्री न्या विष्य श्री न्या विष्य श्री व्या विष्य श्री विषय श्या विषय श्री विषय श्र

Mental-affliction types of obstacles can be divided into two: (1) mental afflictions and (2) dormant mental-affliction obstacles which act to chain us to the cycle of pain. The first of these is eliminated by a bodhisattva on the first bodhisattva level who has not previously traveled on a lower track. And dormant mental-affliction obstacles are not eliminated by enemy destroyers of the listener or self-made buddha types.

न्सरायसार्श्वेर्न्,न्,सार्श्वरायदे,चिराश्रेश्वरायात्रार्यायसार्यप्रमायमार्वेर्द्राचीनायीः विरासीस्था

#### র্বাহ্য মেন্দ্র প্র

Isn't it true that a bodhisattva on the first bodhisattva level who hasn't previously traveled one of the lower tracks has already eliminated the mental afflictions that function to chain one to the cycle of pain?

Because isn't it the case that they have eliminated the need to take—through the power of karma and mental afflictions—any further rebirth? Because doesn't *The Latter Part* include those lines that say,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

ग्रीकार्यर व्यास्त्रेत्र भ्रीताक्ष्य स्टार्म् वर्षा भ्रीतास्य स्था स्टार्म वर्षा स्टार्म स्टार्म वर्षा स्टार्म स्टार्

And isn't it true that enemy destroyers of the listener and self-made buddha types have not eliminated dormant mental-affliction obstacles? Because they take birth based on the level of the seeds of ignorance and karma which is free of impurities.

श्चीयाचीरायराष्ट्रीयाचीरायराष्ट्री राज्यरायाः श्चेत्रात्राय्ये स्वात्रायः स्वात्रायः स्वात्रायः स्वात्रायः स्व स्वात्राद्धेत्राचीरायराष्ट्रीयाः स्वात्रायः स्वात्राय

In reply, we contend that your first proof is incorrect. No bodhisattvas who are realized beings, and who have not traveled on a lower track, ever take rebirth through the power of karma and mental afflictions. And since they do not take rebirth this way, then neither does aging or death or anything of the like that comes through the power of karma and mental afflictions ever occur with them.

यम् श्रीस्य विक्रायि स्वर्धित् । यो स्वर्धित स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्य स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर

This does not however mean that they have then necessarily eliminated the mental afflictions that chain them to the cycle of suffering. And this is because it is not the case that the "uninterrupted" stage of the path of seeing for one who has not traveled the lower tracks and is now on the greater way directly eliminates the seed of ignorance which is the root of the cycle of pain.

भूतः होत् धुः अप्यतः श्रेः तवतः ति प्रायः यात्र धुः । भूतः तुः हुः यात्र अप्यतः यात्र त्याः यात्र त्याः यात्र वितः हः क्षेत्र स्थाः स्थाः यो अप्यत् यात्र यात्र वित भूतः तुः हुः यात्र अप्यत् यात्र यात्र वित्याः यात्र वितः हः क्षेत्र स्थाः स्थाः यो अप्यत् यात्र यात्र वित्यः याः यात्र त्याः यात्र वित्यः यात्र वित्य वित्यः यात्र वित्य वित्यः यात्र वित्य वित्य

Your latter proof is also incorrect. Consider the statement that bodhisattvas on one of the pure levels, and enemy destroyers of the listener and self-made buddha types, take rebirth based on the level of the seeds of ignorance and karma which is free of impurities. The innovators of the greater way state that the "level of the seeds of ignorance" mentioned as a component factor here is an obstacle to omniscience; nowhere is it said to be a mental-affliction obstacle.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

Yet another debate on the subject, from the more expanded version of the monastic textbook by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye:

Suppose someone comes and says the following:

It is true that what causes a bodhisattva who is a realized being to take rebirth must be a mental affliction. But they have destroyed the power that leaves them at the mercy of what is involved with mental affliction, unable to take whatever birth as they please, through the power of their compassion and prayers. So therefore the problems involved with mental afflictions never arise at any of the levels.

# देवैदिन देव दिन क्षेत्रकार विकास क्षेत्र क्

Do you mean to say that—if bodhisattvas who are realized beings were unable to take rebirth in any way they wanted, through the power of their compassion and prayers—then the cause of their rebirth would then necessarily be mental afflictions?

### यंत्रःश्रेन्द्रःश्रेन्द्रःश्रेन्द्रःश्रेन्द्रःश्रेन्द्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्र विक्रित्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रे त्यात्रे त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त्यात्रः त

Or are you saying rather that—even though they have no mental afflictions—they take rebirth through the power of what we call "craving for rebirth": through the craving where they cling to the heaps because as they die and move on they feel a sense of terror that their very being is coming to an end?

### यर्ने दिन दिन दिन के कि ति स्वास्त के कि स्वास के कि

If the former is what you mean to say, then aren't you implying that there could be bodhisattvas who were realized beings who had destroyed being at the mercy of what is involved with mental affliction, but who were unable to take rebirth in any way they wanted, through the power of their compassion and prayers?

### ৴য়৾য়ঽয়৻৻য়ঀ৻য়৾য়ৢয়

You can't say "no," because of the position you've already taken.

Now suppose you say "yes." But isn't it incorrect to say that there are bodhisattvas who are realized beings who have destroyed being at the mercy of what is involved with mental affliction, but who are unable to take rebirth in any way they want, through the power of their compassion and prayers?

Because don't they take birth through the power of that craving for rebirth—that craving where they cling to their heaps, as they die and move on?

Moreover, are you implying then that there exists a bodhisattva who is a realized being and who goes through the processes of aging and sickness due to the power of karma and mental afflictions?

Because there does exist a bodhisattva who is a realized being who goes through the process of rebirth due to the power of karma and mental afflictions.

You can't disagree with this last statement, our reason, because you've already accepted it. And you can't say "yes" to our last question, because of the lines that go,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root.

Now suppose someone else comes and says,

Anyone who is a bodhisattva and also a realized being has always eliminated the need to take birth or to die through the power of karma and mental afflictions.

Consider then a person who is at the "uninterrupted" stage of the path of seeing on the greater way, but who has not previously traveled a lower path. Does what you've just said apply to them?

You can't say "no," because of who they are. If you answer "yes," aren't you then implying that they have eliminated the mental seed for the tendency to grasp to some self-nature of the person that acts as the root of the cycle of pain?

But you must be, because you said "yes" to the above. And you can't agree to this last question of ours, because of the type of person we're talking about.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

Still another debate, from Sera Jetsun's analysis mentioned earlier.

Suppose someone comes and says the following:

There does exist a kind of mental affliction that can act as a cause for a bodhisattva who is a realized being to take rebirth.

Are you saying then that there exists a bodhisattva who is a realized being and who takes rebirth in the cycle of suffering through the power of karma and mental afflictions? Because your position is correct.

And yet you can't agree, since *The Latter Part* includes those lines that say,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

Someone else now comes and says,

Isn't it though the case that there does exist a bodhisattva who is a realized being, and who is possessed of mental afflictions that act as a cause for taking rebirth in the cycle of suffering? Because don't they have mental-affliction obstacles that act this way?

And isn't this so the case? Because don't they have obstacles to omniscience that act this way?

You disagree? It is so the case, because they have the level of the mental seeds of ignorance that acts this way.

### चिर श्रेम्रश्चर्यवाश्वरम् स्थान्त्रम् विष्या कवाश्वर्षे । स्थान्त्रम् स्थान्त्रम्

### श्चे प्रायोग्य प्रायोधीय

And this is true because a bodhisattva who is a realized being takes rebirth in the cycle of pain based on the level of the mental seeds of ignorance, and karma without impurity.

And therefore we can say that there does exist a kind of mental affliction that acts as a cause for a bodhisattva who is a realized being to take rebirth in the cycle of suffering; but that they do not take rebirth through the power of mental afflictions.

But aren't you implying then that a bodhisattva who is a realized being *does* takes rebirth in the cycle of suffering through the power of mental afflictions? Because don't they take rebirth in the cycle of suffering through the power of obstacles to omniscience?

You've already agreed that the one always implies the other. You certainly do, because you've already agreed that this kind of person takes rebirth in the cycle of suffering based on obstacles to omniscience.

You've already agreed that the one always implies the other. And this is because you've

already agreed that they take birth in the cycle of suffering based on the level of mental seeds for ignorance.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

The next piece is from Master Jamyang Shepay Dorje (1648-1721), the writer of the textbooks of the Gomang College of Drepung Monastery.

है। यश्रायक्षेत्र-दर्ग्श्र-प्रमाधितः क्षेत्र-प्रमाधितः क्षेत्र-विश्वायक्ष्यः क्षेत्र-विश्वायक्ष्यः क्षेत्र-विश्वायक्षयः क्षेत्र-प्रमाधितः कष्टितः क्षेत्र-प्रमाधितः कष्टितः कष्

Someone comes again and says the following:

The mental afflictions mentioned here are actual ones. Nonetheless, it is true that they must be the cause that makes a bodhisattva who is a realized being take rebirth. And this is because *The Light on the Twenty Thousand* says, "It is not an impurity for the desire realm or for cyclic existence, because they take rebirth in cyclic existence purposely."

### र्दे व निर तस्योश इस्र अस्तर स्रेत्र मी नियर मीश मार्श्वर दुः की नियर मिरा

Well then, are you saying that there exists a bodhisattva who is a realized being and who takes a new rebirth due to the power of karma and mental afflictions?

Because they have to have that as a cause for taking rebirth.

And yet you can't agree to our question, because bodhisattvas who are realized beings have eliminated the need to go through any new rebirth or death due to karma and mental afflictions. And this is true because of that verse from *The Latter Part* that says,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

Our final selection here is again by Sera Jetsun, this time from his overview of the perfection of wisdom (S6814):

च्यट्यीशःश्चीःचः त्रेष्ठः चीटः त्रम्याश्चात्रः स्त्रीः व्याद्वात्रः स्त्रीः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्रः स्त्राः स्त्रः स्त

Moreover, the above positions are incorrect, for the following reason: there exists no one person who is both a bodhisattva and who is a non-returner at the preliminary stage of the formless realm. This is because there exists no bodhisattva who is a realized being and who takes a rebirth in the formless realm. And this is because there is no bodhisattva who is a realized being who takes a rebirth there purposely; and no bodhisattva who is a realized being and who takes rebirth there through the power of karma and mental afflictions.

ध्रेरा

The first part of our reason above is true because of a statement from *The Briefer Sutra*, where it speaks of "the high qualities of enlightenment" and so on.

विश्वाम्युर्याय्ये क्षेत्र क्षेत्र व्याप्याय्ये व्याप्याये व्याप्याय्ये व्याप्याये व्याप्याय्ये व्याप्याय्ये व्याप्याये व्याप्याय्ये व्याप्याये व्याये व्याप्याये व्याप्याये व्याप्याये व्याप्याये व्याप्याये व्याये व्याप्याये व्याप्याये व्याप्याये व्याप्यये व्याप्याये व्याप्याये व्याप्ये व्याप्यये व्याप्ये व्याप्ये व्याप्ये व्याप्ये व्याप

The second part of our reason is true because of the verse from *The Latter Part* which goes,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

### How Much Trouble You Avoid by Seeing Emptiness

Here's a little piece on how much trouble you can avoid if you can gain the direct perception of emptiness. It's from Drops of Deathless Nectar that Clear Away the Heat of Pain (S0923), a commentary upon the famous work on the steps of the path (lam-rim) entitled The Path of Ease, written by the First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyeltsen (1567?-1662). The commentary is by the master Gungtang Konchok Tenpay Drunme (1762-1823).

The middle-length text on the steps of the path also gives a reason why we should bring people higher. Of all those who have devoted themselves mainly to fulfilling their own needs, the very best would be someone like the Great Pair [Shariputra and Maugalyayana, the two main disciples of Lord Buddha]. But they were not only unable to fulfill the needs of others, they couldn't even fulfill their own.

This is reflected in the following account. Once, the Great Pair were able to have a vision of the realms of hell. Afterwards they went and told the students of the non-Buddhist teacher Purna that he had entrusted them a message to deliver, from hell. The students, shouting "You have blasphemed our Teacher!" beat Maudgalyayana, crushing his arms and legs to a pulp, and killing him.

विष्यः मश्चित्रः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः । विषयः मश्चरः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वरं । स्वरं स्वरं

Bodhisattvas, on the other hand, are liberated from all such troubles from the moment that they see the real nature of things directly; as *The Latter Part* says,

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions—
They have none, and so have none.

देशः इ.च.वेशः वाहे इ.च.वशः यशः वेवाः यः के इ.चें इ.च.वें इ.च.वें इ.चें इ.च.वें इ.च.वें इ.च.वें इ.च.वें इ.च.वें

Therefore, spiritual guides who are true masters need to lead their disciples up to the greater way. As Potowa once said,

There's no point to riding on two ferries When you only have one river to cross. Enter the greater way, therefore, From the very beginning.

That's just the way it is: we need to start of from the very beginning on the path of the greater way. And this subject itself has two parts: how to develop the wish for total enlightenment; and how to train oneself in the deeds of a bodhisattva once you have developed this wish.



#### THE ASIAN CLASSICS INSTITUTE

#### DIAMOND MOUNTAIN UNIVERSITY

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Reading Six: Nine Images for the Concealed Buddha

An Introduction to the Nine Images

We begin with a simple listing of the nine traditional images used to describe our Buddha-nature. These are from Gyaltsab Je's Treatise on "The Latter Part."

1) The image of a Buddha within an ugly lotus.

2) Honey with a bee.

3) The essence within the husk of a piece of grain.

4) Gold within a cesspool.

## भे न्तुयार्थेवे ब्रियाची सायार्थे संकिवे वाहेर न्दा

5) A treasure chest of jewels buried in a poor man's hut.

6) The sprout of a fruit tree or the like, within a small fruit that acts as its seed.

7) The statue of a Victor within a ragged piece of cloth.

8) The world emperor, a lord among men, in the belly of a poor woman

प्रमास्त्र प्रति । स्वीता स्वास्त्र प्रमास प्रति । स्वास प्रमास प्रम प्रमास प्रम प्रमास प्रम प्रमास प्रमास प्रमास प्रमास प्रमास प्रमास प्रमास प्रमास प्रमास

9) The statue made of a precious substance like gold, encased in earth. You should understand that the Buddha-nature which is pure by nature lies within all suffering beings in the same way as described in these images, obscured by the temporary impurities of things involved with mental affliction.

\* \* \* \* \* \*

The nine images are expanded on by Gyaltsab Je, following the root text of The Latter Part:

# वित्रं स्ट्रियः स्ट्र

tat kles'a kos'a garbhatvam. punar jn~eyam. nidars'anaih. |

It lies encased within the mental afflictions, Which can be understood with these images.

# यिष्ठेश्वः यात्रभ्यः मुद्रः यो द्वः यय्त्रः याद्वे । प्रदः ये देवः याद्वे । यद्वे यद्वे । यद्वे । यद्वे । यद्वे यद्वे । यद्वे यद्वे । यद्

Here is the second section from above, where we demonstrate through the use of nine images how the Buddha-essence is obscured by temporary impurities. This point itself we will cover in two parts: a bridge to the previous section, and then an explanation of the point. Here is the first.

र्शेश्वर्थः श्री श्री श्री श्री स्थान्य स्थान

The minds of suffering living beings are, by nature, pure. Nonetheless, we are unable to grasp this nature of the mind, encased as it is within mental afflictions—within impurities which are temporary. This point can be understood with these nine images. One can, incidentally, also take this little section as a summary rather than a bridge—there's no contradiction either way.

र्या.तपु.क्ष्म.धेर.क्री. क्र्या.भाषा.स्या.विश्व.क्षा.धे.यम.याष्ट्रभाष्ट्

Here secondly is the explanation. What all this is referring to is the following. For time without beginning, we have been unable to grasp the nature of our own mind, which lies so close at hand—and so it has remained encased within these mental afflictions, which are a nature of our mind which is not permanently connected to it. When we are able to grasp though the real nature of the mind, then we enter into our true nature, which for beginningless time has been so much a part of us—something we are permanently connected to.

याश्रेश्रायाः याश्रेश्रा श्रेवे: देवं द्राद्रा यवः याश्रेश्रायः याश्रेश्रा द्र्यायः याश्रेश्रायः व्यावः विष्यः व्यावः वः व्यावः विष्यः व्यावः व्यावः

Here is our second part from earlier; we cover it in two sections, a general presentation and then secondary points. The first of these has three steps itself: an explanation why the images are exactly eighteen; an explanation of why the images fit the points they seek to demonstrate; and a refutation of certain questions that might arise.

Here is the first. Now you may ask why there are exactly nine images each for representing the afflicted side of things and the pure side of things.

श्चेतः द्वेतः गृतः वशः र्वेतः स्ट्रियः। सन्त्युरः देशः धवेः श्वेरः।

There is a reason why there are exactly nine images used to represent the afflicted side of things, which acts to obscure our real nature: the reason is that there are exactly nine points being represented by the images; that is, nine different obscurations.

### न्होर्दे।

[Now you can get the first four of these] by counting (1) the seeds of the three poisons, and then (2-4) the strong, manifest forms of all three as one. Or else you can count all three poisons as equivalent in being manifest, and then as causes, that bring about either (1-2) the two higher realms or (3-4) the desire realm—making the treatment according to causal mental afflictions.

द्यायदे:ब्रीम्म्। व्यायदे:ब्राम्याक्रम्थान्नेत्रायदे:ब्रीम्याप्टा प्रमायदे:ब्राम्यदे:ब्राम्यदे:ब्रीम्याप्टाम्याक्रम्थान्यांक्रम्यदे:ब्रीम्याप्टाम्याक्रम्थान्यांक्रम्याप्टाम्याः अर्थेटःश्वेट्यापदे:ब्रीम्यपदे:ब्रीम्

[Then you get five more with] the obscurations that are (5) based on the level of the mental seeds for ignorance, or which are (6) eliminated by the path of seeing, or (7) eliminated by the path of habituation; or which are (8) on the impure levels; and (9) the obscurations that are based on the pure levels. This then makes exactly nine.

याश्वरः मो श्वें वाश्वरः याश्वें प्रायः याश्वरः प्रायः प्

There is also a reason why there are exactly nine images used to represent the pure side of things; and this is again because the points of the images are exactly nine. These are (1) the truth body (dharmakaya); (2) thusness; and three parts to the first of the three types of Buddha-nature—(3) the teachings as realizations and, among the teachings as something physically taught, (4) that highest speech which treats either ultimate reality or (5) that which treats deceptive reality.

ने'म्बेर'हेन'यार्वे'न्द्ये'मासेन'या रेग्रास'यार्टे'में'न्ट्रस्सामामहेस'यस'न्ट्रसें'

# र्यास्य स्था। स्वास्थान्य स्थान्य स्यान्य स्थान्य स्यान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्य

Now there are no divisions to thusness, but you can further divide Buddha-nature into two: its essence, and its power. The first of these can further be divided into (6) the Buddha-nature which lies within us as part of our nature, and (7) the Buddha-nature which develops though proper practice.

पक्चिर्-री-द्रश्रातालुक्जी।
पत्राक्चिमा ने क्षेत्रामक्क्यान्य प्राप्तिमान्य प्राप्तिम

Now the second division of Buddha-nature, as power, further has two divisions of its own. The first is (8) that part of us which will transform into the body of truth. The second is (9) that part of us which will transform into the two kinds of form bodies. Counting these out separately, we arrive at exactly nine. And so because there are eighteen different points to be represented, the images we use to represent them are then exactly eighteen.

यक्षेत्रः मन्त्रः वर्षेत् क्ष्यात्रः प्रकार्यः स्थाः स्थाः

Here is our second point from above: an explanation of why the images fit the points they seek to demonstrate. (1) Just after a lotus makes its appearance, we feel some kind of pleasure; but this same lotus later on can cause us displeasure [as it rots]. Therefore the mental affliction of ignorant desire and a lotus are comparable things.

Now someone may come and ask the following question:

When you say that the lotus is symbolizing ignorant desire, then are you saying that it represents pleasure as it lays dormant in a mental seed, or as something which is already manifest in the mind?

तयुः ही स्त्राप्त हो स्त्र स्त्राप्त हो स्त्र हो स्त्राप्त हो स्त्र हो स्त्र

This isn't a problem. Since you get the feeling of pleasure after it becomes manifest in the mind, then even if you take the ignorant desire as being dormant it can still be represented by the image given. And anyway the point is understood when you say that in general the two are comparable.

क्षेत्राचक्षेत्रित्यते कुष्याय क्षेत्राचित्र यात्रीय स्थाय स्थाय

(2) Feelings of ignorant dislike, and a bee that could keep you from remaining in a state of ease, are similar things. (3) Ignorance itself is like the husk on a piece of grain, which acts to obscure you from seeing the essence within; and so these two are similar too. These three are divided up separately for this presentation because they each have a different capacity to perpetuate themselves in a similar form over a period of time.

श्री श्री तद न स्रोत्ता स्रोत

These in the form they take once they have actually arisen are like (4) filth, in the sense that one can hardly bear to be in them. When they are manifest in a very strong form, they lead one to commit bad deeds; and since bad deeds lead you to sink to your ruin, then the image here is of a cesspool. Because they are no different in their ability to inspire one to commit bad deeds, the three here in their manifest form are counted as one group of obscurations.

The mental seeds for ignorance and that level are similar to (5) a treasure covered with earth. This is because ignorance is an obscuration or obstacle that prevents us from reaching the self-occuring.

Undesirable qualities eliminated by the path of seeing and (6) a fruit are similar in that—just after a sprout has grown from it, the fruit is destroyed. Just so, undesirable qualities eliminated by the path of seeing are eliminated just after the path of seeing itself has grown. Undesirable qualities eliminated by the path of habituation and (7) the ragged piece of cloth are similar in that their essence has been worn out.

र्म् क्रिंग्यायदेश्वर्षा।

र्मेयायद्वर्ण्यायहेश्वर्षा।

र्मेयायद्वर्ण्यायहेश्वर्षा।

र्मेयायद्वर्ण्यायहेश्वर्षा।

र्मेयायद्वर्ण्यायहेश्वर्षा।

र्मेयायद्वर्ण्यायहेश्वर्षा।

र्मेयायद्वर्ण्यायहेश्वर्षा।

र्मेयायद्वर्ण्यायहेश्वर्षा।

The obscurations based on the impure levels and (8) the woman are similar in that they both involve a blockage of really understanding oneself. Obscurations based on the pure levels and being smeared slightly with mud are similar things in that they both involve being slightly obscured with something thin or subtle. Thus it is that the images given and

the points to which they refer are all consistently similar in representing what obscures things.

# नश्चेन नुते निर्देश के श्राध्य निर्देश निर्देश के श्राध्य निर्देश के श्राध्य निर्देश के श्राध्य निर्देश निर्देश के श्राध्य निर्देश नि

Here next is how the images and the points to which they refer are similar in representing what it is that is obscured. The truth body is similar to (1) the Buddha, in that there is nothing in the world that could come close to being similar to them.

The (2) high speech of the Buddha which teaches about ultimate reality is similar to the honey, in that when you experience them they always give you the one same taste of bliss.

The (3) high speech of the Buddha which teaches about deceptive reality is similar to the essence within the a piece of grain, (4) Suchness is similar to gold, in that it can never turn to have any base nature. (5) The Buddha-nature that one possesses by nature is like a treasure, in that it occurs without any effort on our part.

भुक्तिम् विकास्त्र स्त्र स्त्

### शुक्षार्केषाश्वापये हेत्र्न्य प्रतायये धुरा

(6) That Buddha-nature which comes through proper practice is like a cultivated plant, in that it occurs due to our conscious effort. (7) The body of truth is like an image made of some precious substance which has occurred all of its own, because it is not something new created through the conscious effort of some other person—and because it acts as the basis for incredibly excellent qualities.

र्टात्यः हो। या व्याका यश्चेत्रः क्षाण्ये स्वरः ख्री स्वरः स्वरः हो स्वरः स्वरः ख्री स्वरः स्वरः ख्री स्वरः स्वरः

(8) The body of total enjoyment is similar to a world emperor, in that with it you enjoy the power to run a great kingdom of the Dharma. And (9) the emanation is like an image fashioned in gold, because it is no more than a mere form.

Here is the third point from above—a refutation of certain questions which might arise. Now someone may come and ask the following: Since the dormant form of ignorant disliking is something that acts to obscure both the Dharma in the form of teachings and ones Buddhanature, it is incorrect to present it as an obscuration only to the Dharma in the form of realizations.

# देन्क्रम्थायम् त्याक्ष्याम् क्ष्याम् क्ष्याम् क्ष्याम् व्यक्ष्याम् विष्यम् विषयम् विषयम्यम् विषयम् विषयम्यम् विषयम् विषयम्यम् विषयम् विषयम्यम् विषयम् विषयम् विषयम् विषयम् विषयम् विषयम् विषयम् विषयम् विषयम

Moreover, the remaining eight types of obscurations also act to obscure the Dharma in the form of realizations; and so it is incorrect to present only ignorant liking in its dormant form as something that acts to obscure things.

र्म्यायक्षेत्रः ततुः पश्चीयः चीः र्म्याः स्थाः स्थाः

And since the remaining eight things which are obscured are also obscured by ignorant liking in its dormant form, then you can no longer claim that the individual number of images and things they symbolize—the lotus and the so on—for representing what obscures things is fixed at exactly nine, or that there are exactly nine too for representing what it is that is obscured by them.

नस्त्र-प्राचित्रक्षेत्र क्ष्री।

प्रमुत्त न्युत्त न्य

Yet there is no contradiction here, since we assert that—just as the individual number of images or metaphors themselves are fixed with regard to the various objects obscured and the obscurations which obscure them—just so then are the actual, individual points to which these images refer, the things actually obscured and what obscures them, fixed in number.

यादः वर्गानिले त्यः प्रेतः प्

The nine obstacles possessed by the four types of individuals are also distinguished by their dissimilar definitions; there is not any division into nine based on any dissimilarity in their actual substance.

## 

Here then is our second point from before, which has two parts: showing with images what it's like when, once the nine obstacles are cleared away, the essence within is revealed; and what it is that each image or metaphor represents.

We will cover the first of these in three parts: a brief introduction; an expanded explanation; and a summary. The first itself will come in two steps: images for how we have what is obscured and what obscures it; and a brief introduction to the individual image for each of the things obscured and for what obscures them.

पक्षेत्र, प्रमान । स्त्रीं स्वर्म । स्त्रीं स्वरंभ स्वरंभ । स्त्रीं स्वरंभ स्वरं

buddah. kupadme madhu maks.ika-su tus.esu sa-ra-n.yas'ucau suvarn.am| nidhih. ks.itav alpaphale 'n\*kura-di praklinnavastres.u jina-tmabha-vah.| jaghanyana-ri-jath.are nr.patvam. yatha- bhaven mr.tsu ca ratnabimbam| a-gantukakles'amala-vr.tes.u sattves.u tadvat sthita es.a dha-tuh.|

The essence lies within living beings Obscured by the temporary impurities Of the mental afflictions, just like A Buddha in an ugly lotus; or what a bee has; The essence within the husk; gold in a cesspool; A treasure beneath the floor; a sprout or the like And a small

fruit; the image of a Victor Inside a ragged cloth; the lord among men Within the belly of a poor woman; And a precious statue with mud upon it.

प्रमान्तर प्रकृत स्थान स्वाप्त प्रमान स्वाप्त स्

We begin first with a question: "What are the nine images?" And the answer is that they are (1) a Buddha within an ugly lotus; (2) what a bee has; (3) the essence lying within the husk of a piece of grain; (4) a piece of gold within a cesspool; (5) a treasure chest of jewels beneath the floor of a poor man's house; (6) the sprout of a fruit tree or the like lying within a small fruit which acts as its seed; (7) the image of a Victor inside a ragged cloth; (8) a lord among men—that is, a world emperor—lying within the belly of a poor woman; and (9) a statue made of the precious substance of gold within a shell of mud. One should understand that the essence or Buddhha-nature which is pure by its very nature lies—in just the same way as described in these images—within all suffering living beings, obscured by the temporary impurities of the mental afflictions.

यद्ग्रैनश्रायायात्रश्राण्ड्रियार्थ्यात्यार्थ्यात्यार्थ्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्य यद्ग्रीनश्रायात्रायश्रवार्थित्यार्थ्यात्यात्र्यम् विष्णात्रायात्र्यम् विष्णात्र्यात्यात्र्यस्यात्र्यस्यात्र्यस्

This verse means to indicate—through the use of the images of a Buddha within a lotus and so on—the basic fact that, although it is obscured by temporary impurities, we do possess a Buddha-nature.

# भक्र्या-२८-५४-७४-या ब्रियान्य प्रमान्त्र स्थान्य स्था

padma pra-n.i tus.a-s'u ci ks.iti- phala tvak pu-ti vastra-vara stri- duh.kha jvalana-bhitapta pr.thivi- dha-tu praka-s'a- mala-h. | buddha ks.audra susa-ra ka-n~cana nidhi nyagrodha ratna-kr.ti dvi-pa-gra-dhipa ratna bimba vimala prakhyah. sa dha-tuh. parah. |

The impurity is the same as
The lotus, the creature, the husk, the cesspool,
The floor, the fruit, the ragged cloth, the woman
Tortured by the burning fire of pain,
And the element of the earth.
That highest essence free of impurity
Is exactly the same as the Buddha,
The honey, the essence, the gold,
The treasure, the nyagrodha tree,
The jewelled image, the high lord
Of the earth, and the precious form.

## याक्षेत्रायाची द्वीत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्रा

Here is our second point from above: a brief introduction to the individual image for each of the things obscured and for what obscures them. "Now when it says that 'the impurity is the same as them,' what is it that it's the same as?" you may ask.

You should understand that the impurity is the same as the lotus, the creature, the husk, the cesspool, the floor, the fruit, the ragged cloth, the woman tortured by the burning fire of pain, and the element of the earth.

यन्वास्त्रक्ष्यान्ता देवात्रक्ष्यात्रक्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्षत्रक्षयात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्यात्रक्ष्यात्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्यात्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्यात्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्यत्रक्षत्यत्रक्षत्यत्रक्षत्यत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत्रक्षत

"And then it says that 'the highest essence free of impurity is exactly the same as them.' What is it that it's the same as?" You should understand that it's exactly the same as the body of a Buddha, the honey, the essence, the gold, the treasure, the nyagrodha tree, the jewelled image, the high lord of the earth, and the precious form.

यक्षेश्वरायायविष्ठे यहेन्द्रस्थात् । अद्भाष्ट्रस्थात् । अद्याप्ट्रस्थात् । अद्भाष्ट्रस्थात् । अद्भाष्यत् । अद्भाष्यत् । अद्भाष्ट्रस्थात् । अद्भाष्ट्रस्थात् । अद्भाष्यत् । अद्भाष्यत् ।

Here next is our more expanded explanation, which goes in four steps: —establishing, with an image, that the four impurities of ignorant desire and the rest are temporary; — establishing, also with an image, that the mental seed for ignorance is temporary; — establishing, again with an image, that undesirable qualities eliminated by the path of seeing and such qualities eliminated by the path of habituation are temporary; and — establishing, with an image, that the impurities based on the impure and pure levels are temporary.

शर्व श्रीर स्था द्वायाश्वर स्था । व्यायाश्वर स्था ।

The first of these has two parts of its own: establishing, with images, that the dormant form of the three poisons is temporary; and establishing, again with images, that their manifest form is also temporary.

#### 1. The Ugly Lotus

दर्श । प्रकाश मुद्दा अर्थ । प्रकाश मुद्दा । प

The first of these, in turn, has three parts. For the first, we establish with an image that the dormant form of ignorant liking is temporary. This in itself goes in two steps: a bridge to the preceding section, and the root text. The first of these is indicated in the words [from Arya Asanga's commentary], "Now the afflicted." The second proceeds in two further steps: a brief introduction, and then an expanded explanation. The introduction itself has three points of the images; what they refer to; and what it is that purifies the essence of the impurities.

yatha- vivarn.a-mbuja garbha ves.t.itam. tatha-gatam. di-pta sahasra laks.an.am | narah. sami-ks.ya-mala divya locano vimocayed ambuja pattra kos'atah. | vilokya tadvat sugatah. svadharmata-m avi-ci sam.sthes.vapi buddha caks.us.a- | vimocayatya-varan.a-d ana-vr.to@para-nta kot.i sthitakah. kr.pa-tmakah. |

One Gone Thus, blazing with a thousand excellent marks, Lies within an ugly lotus; but a person with the eyes of a deity, Free of impurity, sees inside and extracts them from The capsule of the waterflower's petals. Just so, Those Gone to Bliss turn their eyes upon the beings Who live in Unrelenting Torment, and see even Their own real nature. And then

they who have eliminated Impurities, whose compassion has gone to the final limit, Work to liberate all of us from our obscuration.

स्विम् निर्मान स्विम स्

Here is the first. Take, for example, the body of One Gone Thus—blazing, bejeweled, with the thousand excellent marks of an enlightened being—lying encapsulated within the closed petals of a lotus which has an ill odor and an ugly color. Suppose a person comes along who possesses the "eye of a deity," free of all impurity. They can see into the flower and see this holy body, and then work to extract it from the capsule created by the waterflower's petals.

Here next is what the image refers to. Those Gone to Bliss—the Buddhas—turn their eyes upon the beings who live in the lowest hell (the one called "Unrelenting Torment"), and see directly that even they possess their own real nature. "And then they"—the word "then" here is meant to show that more is coming.

### सवतःर्याःवर्ह्सस्यःयःअनुरःधरःवर्यायःयःसेरःर्रे।।

Here thirdly is what it is that purifies the essence of the impurities. "What is it," one may ask, "that acts to clear away these obscurations?" The Buddhas, the Conquerors, have eliminated the last of all their impurities; and so they are the very image of a compassion which has gone to the final limit of working for living beings, and remains there. And they work to liberate those who have yet to see emptiness directly from the obscuration of their ignorant desire, lying in a dormant form. You could also read the words for "final limit" in the verse from the root text as referring to the Buddhas' having destroyed the entire body of impurities.

मूनियाने में त्रियाने स्थाने स्थाने

yadvat sya-d vijugupsitam. jala ruham. sam.min~ji tam. divya tr.k tad garbha sthitam abhyudi-ks.ya sugatam. patra-n.i sm.chedayet | ra-ga dves.a mala-di kos'a nivr.tam. sam.buddha garbham. jagat ka-run.ya-d avalokya tan nivaran.am. nirhanti tadvan munih. |

One Gone to Bliss lies within a closed, unattractive lotus. A person with the eye of a deity sees them, And cuts the petals open. Just so, the Able Ones see In living beings the essence of a fully enlightened Buddha, Obscured, encased within the impurites of Ignorant liking, disliking, and the rest. In their compassion, They act to destroy these impurities.

Here is our second point from above: the expanded explanation. Think of One Gone to Bliss lying within the closed petals of an unattractive lotus; then a person with the eye of a deity comes, and sees them. They cut the petals open in order to extract them.

ক্রমাপ্র-র্ম্মাপ্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-র্মান্ত্র-রমা

# स्निट्र स्ट्रिंग्य वित्र द्र्यों या वस्त्र स्ट्रिंग स्ट्

The Able Ones see that there exists in every living being the nature or essence of a fully enlightened Buddha—a nature which is obscured, encased within the impurities of ignorant liking, disliking, and the rest. Once they have seen it, then the Able Ones are inspired in their compassion to act—just as the image suggests—to destroy these impurities.

#### 2. The Bee with Honey

यक्षिश्रायालेश्वर्ष्ट्राच्यात्राक्ष्यालेश्वर्षे विद्यान्त्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित्राच्यात्राचित

Here is the second point from above, where we establish with an image that the dormant form of ignorant disliking is temporary. Here again we proceed in two steps: a bridge to the preceding section, and then a treatment of the root text. The first is contained in the phrase that includes "Now the mental afflictions..." As for the second, we will first present the root text, and then explain it. Again the first of these has three sections of its own: the images; what they refer to; and what it is that purifies the essence of the impurities.

yatha- madhu pra-n.igan.opagu-d.ham. vilokya vidva-n purus.as tadarthi-| samantatah. pra-n.igan.asya tasma-d upa-yato 'pakraman.am. prakurya-t| sarvajn~a-caks.ur viditam. mahars.ir madhupamam. dha-tum imam. vilokya tada-vr.ti-na-m. bhramaropama-na-m as'les.am a-tyantikam a-dadha-ti|

A mass of creatures circle around some honey; Just so, wise people—yearning for honey— See it and then use special methods, striving To separate this mass of creatures from it. Great masters use their all-knowing eyes To see the essence within the minds, Which is similar to the honey. They help them to eliminate, forever, The obscurations to it, Which are like the bees.

चयुः क्र्यां श्राम् अस्त्राच्यायम् स्वाप्तायम् स्वाप्ताय स्वाप्ता

Here is the first. Think of some honey circled by a mass of creatures—bees. Wise people, yearning for honey, see it and then use special methods, striving to separate these creatures—the mass of bees—from the honey.

यश्चिम्यान्ते। इरःश्चेंरःकेन्द्रां प्राप्तः सिन्धिनःश्चेन्द्राः स्वान्धिनः सिन्धिनः सिन्धिनः

Here is the second point. Great masters use their all-knowing eyes to see the essence within the minds of living beings. This essence is all of a single song, all of a single sweetness, because it is the true nature of these beings' very minds—and so it is similar to honey. Having seen the essence, they act to destroy the other.

प्रश्चिरः प्रम्था श्रेश्वर्षा। यदः प्रः क्ष्यः श्वेष्टः प्रः प्रदेशः प्रम्थः प्रम्

Here is the third point. All living beings have this essence or Buddha-nature within them which is by nature pure. This essence though is obscured, like the honey is by the bees.

The masters then turn the wheel of the Dharma, in order to help these beings eliminate the obstacles, tuirning them into something which will never grow again within them.

हि.संर.झंट.झु.शूचाक्रयात्रात्राव्यात्राच्चयात्र्येत्राच्छेत्रच्छेत्यच्छेत्रच्ये

yadvat pra-n.i sahasra kot.i niyutair madhva-vr.tam. sya-nnaro madhvarthi- vinihatya ta-n madhu kara-n madhva- yatha- ka-matah. | kurya-t ka-ryam ana-sravam. madhu nibham. jn~a-nam. tatha- dehis.u kles'a-h. ks.udra nibha- jinah. purus.avat tad gha-tane kovidah. |

Honey is obscured by billions upon billions Of creatures; and a person striving for some of it Clears these bees away, then uses the honey In whatever way they wish in making things. Just so, the undefiled mind of living creatures Is like the honey of the bees; Their mental afflictions are like the bees; And the Victors who are masters At destroying these are like the skillful person.

याक्षेत्रः सन्ते हैं स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्त्रः स्वान्तः स्वान्तः

Here secondly is the explanation of the root text. Think of a person striving for some honey: honey that is obscured by billions upon billions of "creatures," or bees. He or she would then clear these bees away from the honey, and use the honey in whatever way they wished to in making food or the like.

### यविश्रायदुःश्चेशःयुःचल्नेदःद्गि।

Just so, the undefiled, true nature of the minds of all living creatures is like the honey of the bees; and the mental afflictions that obstruct us from this particular honey are like the bees themselves. Those who are masters at destroying these obstacles—the Victors, the totally enlightened Buddhas—are like the person who is very skilled at clearing away the bees.

The Essence within a Piece of Grain

Here is the third point from above, where we establish—again with an image—that the dormant form of dark ignorance itself is temporary. Again we have two steps: a bridge to the preceding section, and a treatment of the root text. The first is found in the phrase that includes, "Now the mental afflictions..." As for the second, we have again a presentation and an explanation. The first of these, once more, has three sections concerning the images; what they refer to; and what it is that purifies the essence of the impurities.

हिंदिरःश्चितः स्वतः त्वीः श्चेरः स्वतः विश्वाः स्वाः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्व । स्वाः स्वत्रः स्वतः स्व

### ाने<sup>-</sup>श्चेन<sup>-</sup>कुल'सर्दन्श्चेन्यासुस'यन् से-द्वेन्।

The inner essence of a piece of grain that still has Its husk cannot be enjoyed by people.

Any person seeking something to eat or the like Must extract it from the husk.

Just so, suffering beings will never be able To perform the deeds of a Victor throughout The three realms of existence until The Victor within them, mixed up now With the impurities of the mental afflictions, Is liberated from this condition

Of being mixed up with the afflictions.

र्रायाश्च्री हु.सेर.ही.विश्वाही.झेंश्चर्यः त्रियः विश्वाह्यः यात्राह्यः यात्राह्यः यात्राह्यः यात्राह्यः यात्र यथात्राचरः शुः श्वेश्वराह्यः स्त्रीत्र विश्वराह्यः स्त्रीत् विश्वराह्यः यात्राह्यः स्त्रीत् विश्वराह्यः स्त्री र्यात्राह्यः यात्रियः विश्वराह्यः स्त्रीत् विश्वराह्यः स्त्रीत् विश्वराह्यः स्त्रीत् विश्वराह्यः स्त्रीत् विश्व

Here is the first. Think of the inner essence of a piece of grain that still has its husk or outer shell. Until such time as this husk is removed, the grain itself cannot be enjoyed by people: it can never be delicious food for them. As such, any type of people seeking something to eat or the like must extract it from the husk.

GNYIS PA NI, DE BZHIN DU SEMS CAN RNAMS KYI KHAMS RANG BZHIN GYIS RNAM PAR DAG PA NYON MONGS KYI DRI MA DANG 'DRES NAS GNAS SO,,

Here is the second. Just so, the Buddha-essence of suffering living beings—which is itself pure by its very nature—lies within them mixed up with the impurities of the mental afflictions.

मुन्ना मुन्ना मुन्ना विकायते स्त्रीत प्राप्त स्त्रीत स्त्रीत

Here is the third. Until the Victor-essence of a person is liberated from this condition of being mixed up with the impurities of the mental afflictions, that person will never be able to perform the deeds of a Victor throughout the three realms of existence. And so the Buddhas, the Conquerors, work to remove the impurities that exist within the mental streams of all living beings, so that these beings can attain Buddhahood themselves.

#### चुर्यात्रसम्बर्धा। वर्ष्ठ्रभाद्यम्बर्धाः वर्ष्ठ्रभाद्यम्बर्धाः

These lines indicate what it is that removes the impurities implicitly, by stating explicitly the problems that come when these impurities act to obscure us.

स्त्रिम् स्त्राच्योश्वाच्यात्रेश्वाच्यात्राक्ष्याः स्त्रीत्याः स्

yadvat kan\*guka s'a-li kodrava yava vri-his.vamuktam. tus.a-t sa-ram\*khad. yasusam.skr.tam. na bhavati sva-du-pabhojyam. nr.n.am | tadvat kles'a tus.a-d anih.sr.ta vapuh. sattves.u dharmes'varo dharma pri-ti rasa prado na bhavati kles'a ks.udha-rte jane |

The essence of some grain—rice, or buckwheat, Or barley—has not been removed from its husk: The person who threshes did not carry this out well. And so it will not be something that people Can enjoy; it will not become delicious. Just like this, the Lord of the Dharma lies Within every living being. They are not able To liberate this body encased within The mental afflictions. Threatened then With the hunger of these afflictions, The fine and blissful taste of the Dharma Cannot be shared with them.

म् स्रियः ताकाः माधिरः यदुः योः माः स्वरः स्रियः पाः स्वरः यद्वितः योः व्यवकः त्यावाकः पाः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः य यद्विकः पाः स्वरः पाः स्वरः पाः स्वरः स

### र.मु.४४४.मु.४.जूर्यासुर.च.प्रच्यास्य विभार्त्राम्

Here then is the explanation. Think of some rice, or buckwheat, or barley or the like where the fruit or essence of the grain has not yet been removed from its husk. If the person who then threshes the grain is not able to carry out, well, some means of removing the husks, then the grain will not be something that people can enjoy—it will not become some delicious food that they can eat.

# युः नविष्यः दुः श्रेश्रश्चार्यः स्वर्यः स्वरं स्वरं

There is something which is just like this image, and it is what we can call the "Lord of the Dharma which is going to occur"—the one which lies within every living being. This is the Lord of the Dharma in the form of suchness itself, the kind that is involved with impurity.

# क्रेंब्र ऑटब्र प्रते खुंब्र यथा आर्थेय प्रते स्ट्रेंड्र प्रत्य प्रत्य क्रेंब्र ऑटब्र सुव्य प्रत्य क्रेंब्र प्रत्य क्रेंब्र यथा क्रेंब्र प्रत्य क्रेंब्र क्र क्रेंब्र क्र क्रेंब्र क्र क्रेंब्र क्र क्रेंब्र क्र क्रेंब्र क्र क्रेंब्र क्र क्र क्र क्रेंब्र क्र क्र

But suppose that living beings are not able to liberate this essence—that is, this body—from within the husk of what is involved with mental afflictions. In that case their body will be threatened with starvation—with the hunger of the mental afflictions—and it will not be possible to share with them the fine and blissful taste of the Dharma.

Thus it is then that the Buddhas work to clear the mental afflictions away from these beings, and help them experience the delightful taste of the Dharma. That is, the Buddhas provide a personal cause or factor for this experience, by teaching these beings the Dharma; the impurities can only be directly removed by each disciple themselves.

#### 4. The Gold Coin Dropped in a Cesspool

यिष्ठेश्वरात्यायिष्ठेश अस्त्रश्चास्त्रुरायाद्या स्वावर्षे ।द्रावर्षे १६८ वर्षे

# र्यट्यायात्रे लेयात्या । याहेयायायात्रहेया यसूत्रायात्रेया व्यवदायत्या । प्रतिस्थायात्रेया स्थापायात्रेया स्थापायात्रेयात्यात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्यात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्य

Here is our second point from before, which is establishing—again with images—that the manifest form of the three poisons is also temporary. Once again we have two steps: a bridge to the preceding section, and a treatment of the root text. The first is found in the phrase that includes, "Now the mental afflictions..." For the second, we have again a presentation and an explanation. The first of these, yet again, has three sections, with the images; what they refer to; and what it is that purifies the essence of the impurities.

भिन्ने प्रमान्त स्थान्य स्थान

yatha- suvarn.am. vrajato narasya cyutam. bhavet sam.kara pu-ti dha-ne | bahu-ni tad vars.a s'ata-ni tasmin tathaiva tis.t.hed avina-s'a dharmi | tad devata- divya vis'uddha caks.ur vilokya tatra pravaden narasya | suvarn.am asmin navam agra ratnam. vis'odhya ratnena durus.va ka-ryam | dr.s.t.va- munih. sattva gun.am. thativa kles'es.vamedhya pratimes.u magnam | tat kles'a pan\*ka vyavada-na hetor dharma-mbuvars.am. vyasr.jat praja-su |

A man is running, and he drops a piece of gold Into a cesspool filled with rotten filth. The gold is immutable, and stays the way It has always been, even if it should lie there For many hundreds of years. A deity with the perfectly clear eye of a deity Sees that the gold is there, and says To a human person, "Down there is gold, The highest form of precious substance. Wipe it off, and create something Which can only be made with something precious. Just so, the Able Ones can see this high quality Possessed by all suffering beings, chained within The mental afflictions, which are like the filth. And then, in order to remove the muck Of the mental afflictions, they send down A rain of the holy Dharma upon The mass of suffering living beings.

# रदःस्त्री हःस्रम्भःब्रियायमःदुम्यःम्ब्रुयायमःद्वात्रः

Here is the first. Think of a man running down a path; he accidentally drops a piece of gold into a cesspool filled with rotten filth.

याक्षेत्रः स्टः वी दे दि द्वा यस् की त्वा स्वा त्वा के का का ते के का ते ते क्षेत्रः है स्वा स्वा विका के का त दे प्रतिव तु की यार्वदः प्रति यावका दे सः विका के का का त्वा का त्वा का वाका विका का त्वा का विका का त्वा विका

The very essence of the gold is not something that could ever go bad then; it is something immutable. The gold stays the way it always has been, even if it should lie in the cesspool for many hundreds of years.

द्धरःश्रेमान्नान्दः स्वन्यः सः स्वाध्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्वयः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर

Then along comes a deity with the clear eye of a deity, who sees that the gold is there. He says to a human person, "Down there in the cesspool you can find some gold, the highest form of precious substance. Take it, and wipe it off, and then create something with it: something which can only be made with the most precious of things—the holy body of One Gone Thus, or something of the like." Just so, Those Gone Thus teach us the Dharma, and help us to remove our impurities.

Here is the second. Just so, the Able Ones can see that there exists within every living being a certain essence: the one that is pure by its very nature. They see this high quality possessed by all suffering beings, chained as they are within the realm of the mental afflictions, themselves so much like the filth of a cesspool.

# कुर श्रीय प्राचित्रकार प्रत्य प्राचित्रकार के स्था के स्था कि स्था प्रत्य प्राचित्रकार के स्था के स्थ

Here is the third. And then—in order to remove the muck of the what is mentally afflicted from them—the Able Ones send down upon the mass of suffering living beings a great rain of the holy Dharma, a teaching which is specifically designed to fit their individual inner natures and wishes. And thus do they help us clear away our obstacles.

|बेसकारुव:इसकारायावीवाकार्यकारी:सुरायदेश सुकारुव:स्वाकार्यकारी । वित्र सुकारुव:स्वाकार्यकारी । वित्र सुकारिया सुकारिया

yadvat sam\*kara pu-ti dha-na patitam. ca-mi-karam. devata- dr.s.t.va- dr.s'yatamam. nr.n.a-m upadis'et sam.s'odhana-rtham. mala-t | tadvat kles'a maha-s'uci prapatitam. sam.buddha ratnam. jinah. sattves.u vyavalokya dharmam adis'at tacchuddhaye dehina-m

A deity sees a piece of gold that has been dropped Into a cesspool filled with rotten filth. In order to see it made completely clean again, They take great pains to point out this Most exquisite object to a human person. Just so, the Victors see this precious thing Of a fully enlightened Buddha within all Living beings, although it has fallen Into the great cesspool of the mental afflictions. And in order to clean it off, they teach The Dharma to these beings.

चीशः हुँ य.त.केर महर चीर यथा भीय है. देया तर चीर पदु हीर अकूया है. यह या या शर है. यो त्या य पिष्ठ या ते प्राप्त के प्रा

Here is the second, the explanation. A deity sees a piece of gold that has been dropped into a cesspool filled with rotten filth. And in order to see it made completely clean again, the deity takes great pains to point out this most exquisite object—the gold—to a human person.

रे.चब्रेच.री.क्रियाचार्यः विश्वरायः विश्वरायः विश्वरायः क्रियः विश्वरायः क्रियः विश्वरायः विश्वर

Just so, the Victor—meaning the Victor-essence of living beings, here called "the Victor"—has fallen into the great cesspool of the mental afflictions. But the Victors themselves see this precious thing, the essential nature of a fully enlightened Buddha within all living beings, and in order to clean it off they teach these beings the Dharma.

5. The Treasure Buried In a Poor Man's Hut

पित्रस्य प्राप्तिका अक्ष्रका स्थित्। स्थित स्थि

Our second point from before is establishing, once more with an image, that the mental seed for ignorance is temporary. This has two parts: a bridge to the previous section, and a treatment of the root text. The first is found in the phrase, "Now the mental afflictions..." The second has two parts of its own: a presentation, and then an explanation. The first has two parts, consisting of the image and its point.

हिःस्रम्भेन्त्वयाष्ट्रिम्भः विकासम्भावेषात्र। । स्थान्यस्य विकासम्भावेषात्रः । । । स्थानेष्यस्य । । । स्थानेष्यस्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य । । । स्थानेष्यस्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य । । । स्थानेष्यस्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य । । । स्थानेष्यस्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य । । । स्थानेष्यस्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य । । । स्थानेष्यस्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य विकासम्य ।

yatha- daridrasya narasya ves'manyantah. pr.thivya-m. nidhir aks.ayah. sya-t| vidya-n na cainam. sa naro na ca-sminnes.o 'ham asmi-ti vaden nidhis tam| tadvan mano'ntargatam

apyacintyam aks.ayyadharma-malaratnakos'am| abudhyama-na-nubhavatyajasram. daridryaduh.kham. bahudha- prajeyam|

Under the floor in the house of a poor man Is a treasure that will never run out. The man doesn't know that it's there; But neither does the treasure say To the man, "I'm down here!" Just so, there lies buried within the mind a treasure Of precious jewels. It is free of all impurity, Never happens anew, nor eliminated anew. It is, in short, the very nature of things. Because they have failed to realize it, The entire mass of living beings are poor, And undergo, in a constant stream, The many different forms of suffering.

Here is the first. Think of the house of a poor man—and under the floor is a treasure that will never run out, no matter how much you take from it. The man doesn't know that it's there; but neither does the treasure announce itself to the man, saying "I'm down here!"

यिष्ठश्रास्त्री देःचिष्ठित्रः श्रेश्यश्रास्त्र स्थ्याः श्रेश्यास्त्र स्थ्याः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्याः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्य

Here is the second. Just so, there lies buried within the mind of every living being a treasure of precious jewels—which makes it possible for every single high quality that there is to occur in these beings. And this is the fact that they are free from all impurity, by their very nature: the fact that neither of the two self-natures even exist (something which never happens anew), and the fact that neither of these two self-natures ever need be eliminated anew. It is, in short, the very nature of things within one's own mindstream—involved as it is at present with impurities.

र्यो.यर्ज्ञ श्रीट.ह्र्। किंग्यनर्ज्ञ प्रदेश प्रत्या पर्वा त्र विष्या पर्वा त्र विष्या पर्वा त्र विष्या पर्वा विषया पर्वा विष्या पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विष्या पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया विषया पर्वा विषया विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया विषया विषया पर्वा विषया पर्वा विषया व

## हेन.री.वर्चेर.चर.वर्चेर.रू.।

Because they have failed to realize the fact that do have this nature, then the entire mass of living beings—already poor in the sense that they lack the bliss of freedom—are forced to undergo, in a constant stream, these many different forms of suffering. And it is in order to clear this pain away that the Buddhas appear in the world.

yatha- daridrasya narasya ves'manyantah. pr.thivya-m. nidhir aks.ayah. sya-t | vidya-n na cainam. sa naro na ca-sminnes.o@ham asmi-ti vadennidhis tam | tadvan mano@ntar gatam apyacintyam aks.ayya dharma-mala ratna kos'am | abudhyama-na-nubhavatyajasram. da-ridrya duh.kham. bahudha- prajeyam |

A treasure of precious jewels lies buried In the house of a poor man; it does not say To the man, "I'm here!" And so The man does not know. Just so, there lies in the house of our own mind A treasure, and living beings are like the poor man. Great masters take their perfect birth here In the world, in order that these beings Should come to attain that.

याक्षेत्रायाक्षेत्र हिन्द्रमञ्जे न्त्र्याये विष्या क्षेत्र क्षेत्र केत्र याहे म्या क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र केत्र याहे म्या क्षेत्र क्

Here next is the explanation. And so there lies buried a treasure of precious jewels in the house of a poor man; and it does not speak to the man and say, "I'm down here!" And so the man does not know it is there.

ने प्रबेष मुन्यम् क्रिया क्रि

Just so, there lies in the house of our own mind a treasure: something from which all the qualities of a Buddha are produced. But living beings don't know it is there, and so they are like the poor man.

श्रेश्वर्ष्ण न्या स्वास्त्र विष्ट्र विष्ट्

Then great masters take their perfect birth here in the world, and turn the wheel of the Dharma in order to help these living beings attain that body of truth, possessed of the two kinds of purity.

6. The Sprout within a Small Fruit

यात्रायात्रिया याद्वेत्रायर्ग प्रत्यात्रिया याद्वेत्रायर्ग प्रत्यात्रिया याद्वेत्रायर्ग प्रत्यात्रिया याद्वेत्यर्ग प्रत्यात्रिया याद्वेत्यर्ग प्रत्यात्रिया याद्वेत्यर्ग प्रत्यायात्रिया याद्वेत्यर्ग प्रत्यायात्र्यं प्रत्यायात्र्या याद्वेत्यर्ग प्रत्यायात्र्यं प्रत्यायात्यात्यायात्र्यं प्रत्यायात्र्यं प्रत्यायात्यायात्यायात्यायात्यायात्यायात्यायात्यायात

Here is the third point from before, which has two parts: establishing, still again with an image, that undesirable qualities eliminated by the path of seeing and such qualities eliminated by the path of habituation are temporary. The first of these we will cover itself in two steps: a bridge to the previous section, and an explanation of the point. The first of these is found in the phrase that includes, "Now the mental afflictions..." The second has two parts too: a presentation, and then an explanation. The first of these comes in two sections, an image and then its point.

## कुर्क्षावस्य कुष्य देवे प्रत्या । दे प्रत्ये प्रत्यो प्रत्ये प्रत्ये । देस कुष्य कुष्य प्रत्ये कुष्य देवे प्रत्ये प्रत्ये प्रत्य कुर्म

yatha-mra ta-la-di phale druma-n.a-m. bi-ja-n\*kurah. sanna vina-s'a dharmi- | uptah. pr.thivya-m. salila-di yoga-t krama-d upaiti druma ra-ja bha-vam | sattves.vavidya- di pala tvag antah. kos'a-vanaddhah. s'ubha dharma dha-tuh. | upaiti tat tat kus'alam. pratitya kramen.a tadvan muni ra-ja bha-vam |

A fruit from a tree such as a mango Has a seed for a sprout; something That will never end. In a place that possesses Cultivated earth and water and the like, That thing which is a king Will, step by step, come forth. The ignorance and the like Within all suffering beings Is the fruit; encased within the skin Is the Buddha-essence, the realm Of all things, that virtue. Just so, one possesses the virtue, And by relying on this One is turned, step by step, Into that thing which is

The King of the Able Ones.

यो क्विया संदेश हैं से स्थान स्थान

Here is the first. Think of a fruit that has come from a tree such as a mango or a @@maduluk. It has a pit or seed within it which has the power to produce a sprout for a new tree; and so this power in a sense is something that will never end. If the seed then is planted in a place that possesses all the necessary contributing factors—earth that is cultivated in the proper way; water; fertilizer; and the like—then that thing which is the king of all trees will, step by step, come forth.

GNYIS PA NI, SEMS CAN RNAMS KYI MA RIG PA SOGS NYON MONGS PA'I 'BRAS BU'AM, SHING GI 'BRAS BU DANG 'DRA BA'I MA RIG PA SOGS KYI PAGS PA'I SBUBS KYI NANG DU CHUD PA'I CHOS KHAMS DGE BA RANG BZHIN GYIS RNAM PAR DAG PA

युवर्या विट मी वर्ष्य सुर्व स्थय ग्री स्थान स्थान स्थित स्थान स्थ

## दर-र्-ढुर-पर्वे केंश-विस्रस-रवो च रर-विद्युक्त सुरा दर-र्वा प

Here is the second. Here we are talking about the fruit or result of the afflicted things of ignorance and the like within all suffering beings; or else say the ignorance and so on that are like the fruit of a tree. Encased within the skin of the fruit, buried within it is the Buddha-essence, the realm of all things, that virtue within us which is pure by its very nature.

Just so, again, the factors that help this Buddha-essence awaken come together; and from this moment on one possesses the virtue to be guided along the path of the greater way. By relying on this virtue then one is turned, step by step, into that thing which is the King of the Able Ones.

त्त्रभःस्याक्ष्यःस्र विद्याक्षः यद्याः स्याक्ष्यः विद्याक्षः विद्याक्षेत्रः विद्याक्षः विद्याक्षः

ambva-ditya gabhasti va-yu pr.thivi- ka-la-mbara pratyayair yadvat ta-la phala-mra kos'a vivara-d utpadyate pa-dapah. | sattva kles'a phala tvag antara gatah. sam.buddha bi-ja-n\*kuras tadvad vr.ddhim upaiti dharma vit.apas tais taih. s'ubha pratyayaih. |

यश्चित्रः यात्रः स्वायते स्वयते स्वायते स्वाय

Here next is the explanation. Think of the factors of water, and rays of light from the sun, and wind, and earth, and time, and space in the sense of its allowing a place for things to

happen. They help the seed lying enveloped within the fruit of a coconut or mango tree to produce a tree.

## स्याकारायुःक्रम् स्थान्त्रीक्ष्युःक्ष्म् स्थान्य स्थान

Just so, there is the natural purity of the mind—the seed for a fully enlightened Buddha—buried within the skin of the mental afflictions of all suffering beings; these mental afflictions being like the fruit.

From this springs then the sprout of a Buddha. To follow the image, the factors of the three-step process of study, contemplation, and meditation—this "virtue"—help the high qualities of the greater way to burst forth and then grow.

# म्न्याम् । विकास मिन्न विकास विकास क्षेत्र । विकास क्षेत्र ।

This sprout then grows ever higher and higher, increasing, and from that then we attain Buddhahood itself.

7. The Statue of the Victor within a Ragged Cloth

Here is the second point from above, where we establish that undesirable qualities eliminated by the path of habituation are temporary. This in itself has two parts: a bridge to the previous section, and an explanation of the point. The first, again, is found in the phrase that goes, "Now the mental afflictions..." The second has two steps: a presentation and an explanation. The first again has three sections: the image, its point, and what it is that clears away the obscurations.

विस्तर्भः क्षेत्रः स्वाचित्रः स्वाचित्रः विद्यान्तः वि

bimbam. yatha- ratna mayam. jinasya durgandha pu-tyambara sam.niruddham | dr.s.t.vojjhitam. vartmani devata-sya muktyai vaded adhva gam etam artham | na-na-vidha klesa malopagu-d.ham asan\*ga caks.uh. sugata-tma bha-vam | vilokya tiryaks.vapi tad vimuktim. pratyabhyupa-yam. vidadha-ti tadvat |

An image of the Victor made
From some precious material
Is all wrapped up in a tattered cloth
That has a foul odor.
A deity sees it lying on a path,
And hopes to have the image removed;
So they tell someone there is
This object lying on the path.
Just so, those who have the holy eyes
See that the thing which is the One Gone to Bliss
Has been wrapped up tightly in a wide variety
Of mental afflictions, for beginningless time.
And they see that this exists even within animals.
In just this way, they instruct us in
The method, in order to free us.

८८.स्.यु। इ.जैरायोश्यात्राक्षयात्राचीयात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्यायात्राच्या

Here is the first. Think of an image of a Victor made from some precious material like gold, all wrapped up in a tattered cloth that has a foul odor.

त्रम्यान्त्रीत्रः प्रते त्रम्यान्त्रः प्रमान्त्रः प्रते त्रम्यान्त्रः प्रमान्त्रः प्रमान्

The cloth is lying discarded on a path out in the countryside, where lots of people are walking—coming and going. A deity staying in the area sees that there is an image wrapped in the cloth; they hope to have it removed from the cloth that obscures it, and keep it from being stepped upon by people. And so they tell a human person who is nearby that there is this object lying on the path.

Here is the second. Just so, that thing which is actually One Gone to Bliss lies wrapped up tightly in a wide variety of mental afflictions; and has been so for time with no beginning. And those gone that way see this very suchness, involved as it is with impurities, even within animals—and absolutely no different in its nature than that which lies within any other form of life.

म्यायात्रीय न्यान्त्रियात्त्री विषयात्त्रियात्त्रीयात्त्रात्त्रीयात्त्रीयात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रा व्यायात्र्यात्रात्त्री न्यान्त्रियात्त्रीयात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रा

Here is the third. In just the way that this image suggests, the Buddhas instruct suffering beings in the method subsumed by the paths of the three different types of people, in order to free them.

श्र्यात्रां स्ट्रिया में स्ट्रिया में स्ट्रिया में स्ट्रिया स्ट्रिया स्ट्रिया में स्ट्रिया स्ट्रिया में स्ट्रिया स्ट्रिया में स्ट्रिया स्

## यापराम्बीम्याद्यावराचराच्युद्धेराक्क्याचाक्र्यासूदाह्य

yadvad ratna mayam. tatha-gata vapur durgandha vastra-vr.tam. vartmanyujjhitam eks.ya divya nayano muktyai nr.n.a-m. dars'ayet | tadvat kles'a vipu-ti vastra nivrtam. sam.sa-ra vartmojjhitam. tiryaks.u vyavalokya dhatum avadad dharmam. vimuktyai jinah. |

An image of the One Gone Thus which has a nature Of some precious substance is all wrapped up In a cloth that has a foul odor. It is lying in the middle Of a path, and someone with the eye of a deity Sees it. In order to free it, they show it to a human person. Just so, our Buddha-essence lies in the path of the Cycle of suffering, all wrapped up in the tattered cloth Of the mental afflictions. They see it, even in animals, And so in order to free us the Victors teach the Dharma.

श्रीयःग्रीतः व्यक्षः स्टान्स्यः स्ट्रीयः स्ट्री

Here secondly is the explanation. An image of the One Gone Thus which has a nature of some precious substance is all wrapped up in a cloth that has a foul odor. It is lying in the middle of a path, and someone with the eye of a deity sees it. In order to free it from the thing that obscures it, this deity shows the object to a human person.

चश्रक्ष्यः भूक्ष्यः भूक्ष्यः भूक्ष्यः भूक्ष्यः भूक्ष्यः भूक्षः भू

Just so, our Buddha-essence—the one which is pure by its very nature—lies in the path of the cycle of suffering, all wrapped up in the tattered cloth of what is involved with the mental afflictions. The Buddhas see that we have this nature—that even animals have it.

And so in order to free then all these living beings from the cycle, these Victors teach us the Dharma.

8. The World Emperor in the Womb of a Poor Woman

प्रविध्यायात्रिक्षा अप्त्राधिक्षायाः प्रविद्यायाः प्रविद्यायः प्रवि

Here finally is our fourth point from above. It comes in two steps: establishing, with an image, that the impurities based on the impure levels are temporary; and establishing—again with an image—that the impurities based on the pure levels are temporary. The first of these has two parts of its own: a bridge to the previous section, and an explanation of the point. The first is again found in the phrase that includes, "Now the mental afflictions..." The second has two parts: a presentation and an explanation. The first of these in turn has two sections consisting of the image and the point which it conveys.

परुषाया । वि.सेन्। प्राप्त स्वार्थ स्

na-ri- yatha- ka-cid ana-tha bhu-ta- vased ana-tha-vasathe viru-pa- | garbhen.a ra-ja s'riyam udvahanti- na s-vabudhyeta nr.pam. svakuks.au | ana-tha s'a-leva bhavopapattir antarvati- stri-vad asuddha sattva-h. | tad garbhavat tes.vamalah. sa dha-tur bhavanti yasmin sati te sana-tha-h. |

There are some woman who are ugly, With no protector; they live in a residence With no one to protect them. And yet they hold in their womb The most glorious of emperors; But they are unaware that this lord Of men is in their own belly. They are like those who are

born Into the house of the cycle, And have no one to protect them. These suffering beings, impure, Are like the woman with the emperor Inside her womb; and anyone who does Have this will have someone who can Protect them. This is similar To those who have, within Their wombs, the Buddha-essence Which is free of impurity.

Here is the first. Think of a woman who is ugly and poor. She lives in a house, a residence, where there is no one who can protect her. But she holds in her womb a glorious wheel emperor—and she is unaware that this lord among men is in her own belly.

याहेश्यायते प्रतिन्त्रे प्रतिन्तिन्त्रे प्रतिन्तिन्ति प्रतिन्ति प्रतिनित्ति प्रतिनिति प्रति प्रतिनिति प्रति प्रतिनिति प्रतिनिति प्रति प्रतिनिति प्रतिनिति प्रतिनिति प्रति प्रतिनिति प्रति प्रति

Here is the second. She is like then those suffering beings who are born into the house of the cycle of the suffering of the three realms, and who have no one to protect them. These suffering beings, who have not yet been able to purify themselves of the temporary impurities, are too like the woman who has the wheel emperor inside her womb.

## मुन्नाः क्षेत्राः भ्रत्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्वाध्याः स्व

Anyone who does have this in their womb will, through a gradual process, in the end have someone who can protect them. This is similar to the fact that suffering beings have, within their wombs, the Buddha-essence which is free of any impurity.

, JI LTAR BUD MED LUS LA DRI BCAS GOS GYON MI SDUG GZUGS LDAN PA, SA BDAG MNGAL NA GNAS KYANG MGON MED KHANG PAR SDUG BSNGAL MCHOG MYONG LTAR, ,DE BZHIN BDAG RANG NANG GNAS MGON YOD GYUR KYANG MGON MED BLO LDAN PA, ,'GRO BA NYON MONGS DBANG GIS YID MA ZHI BAS SDUG BSNGAL GZHI LA GNAS,

NYIS PA NI, JI LTAR BUD MED LUS LA DRI BCAS GOS GYON MI SDUG GZUGS LDAN PAS BDAG MNGAL GYI NANG DU GNAS KYANG DE MI SHES PAR MGON MED KHANG PAR SDUG BSNGAL MCHOG MYONG BA LTAR DE BZHIN DU SEMS CAN BDAG RANG GI NANG NA GNAS PA'I MGON YOD PAR GYUR KYANG MGON MED PA'I BLO DANG LDAN PA 'GRO BA NYON MONGS PA'I DBANG GIS YID KYI RGUD PA MTHA' DAG MA ZHI BA 'KHOR BA'I SDUG BSNGAL GYI GZHI LA GNAS PA RNAMS KYI NYON MONGS PA ZHI BA'I CHED DU SANGS RGYAS RNAMS KYIS CHOS STON PAR MDZAD DO, ,SGRIB PA SEL BYED DNGOS SU MA SMROS KYANG GONG 'OG LTAR SHES PAR BYA'O, ,

#### 9. The Golden Statue covered with Mud

9) GOLD IMAGE GNYIS PA LA GNYIS, MTSAMS SBYAR BA DANG, DON BSHAD PA'O, DANG PO NI, NYON MONGS PA NI ZHES SO, GNYIS PA LA GNYIS, BSTAN PA DANG, BSHAD PA'O, DANG PO LA GSUM, DPE DANG, DON DANG, SGRIB PA SEL BYED DO,, JI LTAR NANG GI GSER ZHUN GZUGS RGYAS PA, ZHI BA PHYI ROL SA YI RANG BZHIN CAN, MTHONG NAS DE SHES PA DAG NANG GI GSER, SBYANG PHYIR PHYI ROL SGRIB PA SEL BYED LTAR, RANG BZHIN 'OD GSAL DRI MED RNAMS KYANG NI, GLO BUR BAR NI RNAM PAR GZIGS GYUR NAS, RIN CHEN 'BYUNG GNAS LTA BU'I 'GRO BA RNAMS, SGRIB PA DAG LAS SBYONG MDZAD BYANG CHUB MCHOG,

#### @@ Skt

DANG PO NI, JI LTAR 'JIM PA'I NANG GI GSER ZHUN MA LAS BYAS PA'I DE BZHIN GSHEGS PA'I GZUGS YAN LAG THAMS CAD RDZOGS PAS RGYAS PA, GSER GYI SKYON ZHI BA PHYI ROL LA? SA'I RANG BZHIN CAN 'JIM PAS GYOGS PA MTHONG NAS DE SHES PA DAG GIS NI NANG GI GSER SBYANG BA'I PHYIR PHYI ROL GYI SGRIB PA SEL BAR BYED PA LTAR RO., GNYIS PA NI. SEMS KYI RANG BZHIN 'OD GSAL SGRIB BYED KYI DRI MA RNAMS KYANG NI GLO BUR BAR NI RNAM PAR GZIGS PAR GYUR NAS, GSUM PA NI SANGS RGYAS KYI CHOS MTHA' YAS PA SKYE RUNG GI GNAS SU GYUR PAS RIN CHEN 'BYUNG GNAS LTA BU'I 'GRO BA RNAMS SGRIB PA DAG LAS SBYONG BAR MDZAD CING, BYANG CHUB MCHOG DAG PA GNYIS LDAN DE THOB PAR MDZAD DO., YANG NA GANG GIS SGRIB PA SBYONG BAR MDZAD CE NA, BYANG CHUB MCHOG SANGS RGYAS KYIS SO, ,ZHES BSHAD DO,, ,JI LTAR DRI MED GSER 'BAR LAS BYAS SA YI NANG DU CHUD GYUR GZUGS, 'ZHI DE RANG BZHIN MKHAS PAS RIG NAS SA DAG SEL PAR BYED PAR LTAR, ,DE BZHIN KUN MKHYEN DAG PA'I GSER 'DRA ZHI BA'I YID NI MKHYEN GYUR NAS, CHOS 'CHAD TSUL GYIS BRDEG SPYAD SGRUB PAS SGRIB PA DAG NI SEL BAR MDZAD,

GNYIS PA NI, JI LTAR DRI MED GSER 'BAR LAS BYAS PA SA'I NANG DU CHUD PAR GYUR PA'I GZUGS MDZES SHING ZHI BA DE RIN PO CHE'I BRTAG DPYAD KYI RANG BZHIN LA MKHAS PAS RIG NAS SA DAG SEL PAR BYED PA LTAR DPE DE BZHIN DU KUN MKHYEN GYIS DAG PA'I GSER DANG 'DRA BA ZHI BA'I YID RANG BZHIN RNAM DAG MKHYEN PAR GYUR NAS RIN PO CHE LA YOD PA'I 'DAM GZOD LA SOGS PA'I RDEG SPYAD KYIS SEL BA LTAR. GLO BUR GYI DRI MA SBYONG BYED THEG GSUM GYI LAM 'BRAS BU DANG BCAS PA STON PAR BYED PA'I CHOS 'CHAD PA'I TSUL GYI THABS KYI RDEG SPYAD BSGRUBS PAS SGRIB PA DAG NI SEL BAR MDZAD PAR SHES PAR BYA'O,, 'DI YAN CHAD DU BSGRIB BYA SGRIB BYED KYI DPE RGYAS PAR BSHAD PAS DRI MA SPYAD RUNG GI GLO BUR BA DANG, DE SBYONG BYED DANG, SGRIB PA JI LTAR SEL BA'I TSUL LA SOGS PA BSTAN PA YIN NO., GSUM PA DON BSDU BA LA GSUM, MTSAMS SBYAR BA DANG, RTZA BA DANG, 'GREL PA'O, DANG PO NI, DPE RNAMS KYI BSDUS PA'I DON NI ZHES SO,, PAD MA SROG CHAGS BUNG BA DANG, SBUN PA DANG NI MI GTZANG SA, ,'BRAS SHUN GOS HRUL BUD MED KYI, ,MNGAL DANG SA YI SBUBS NA YANG, "SANGS RGYAS RTZI SNYING PO BZHIN, "GSER BZHIN GTER BZHIN LJON PA BZHIN, ,RIN CHEN SKU DANG 'KHOR LO YIS, ,BSGYUR BA BZHIN DANG GSER GZUGS BZHIN, SEMS CAN KHAMS KYI NYON MONGS SBUBS,

#### @@Skt

GNYIS PA LA GSUM, SGRIB BYED KYI DPE DANG, BSGRIB BYA'I DPE DANG, SEMS RANG BZHIN RNAM DAG LA DRI MA GLO BUR BAR GRUB PA'I DON TO, DANG PO NI, PAD-MA'I SBUBS NA ZHES PA'I BAR RO., GNYIS PA NI, SANGS RGYAS ZHES SO, DE GNYIS SBYAR NAS PAD-MA'I SBUBS NA SANGS RGYAS BZHIN ZHES PA NAS SA'I SBUBS NA GSER GZUGS BZHIN ZHES SBYAR NAS BSHAD DO., GSUM PA NI, SEMS CAN KHAMS KYI NYON MONGS PA'I SBUBS RANG BZHIN GYIS MA GRUB CING SEMS KYI RANG BZHIN LA MA ZHUGS PAS MA 'BREL PA DUS THOG MA MED PA NAS YOD PA SEMS KYI RANG BZHIN BDEN PAS STONG BA DRI MA RANG BZHIN GYIS MED PA DE BZHIN GSHEGS PA'I SNYING PO NI THOG MA MED PA NAS YOD PA YIN PAR BRJOD DE, SEMS RANG BZHIN GYIS GDOD NAS MA GRUB PA'I PHYIR RO., GSUM PA NI, MDOR BSDUS NA DE BZHIN GSHEGS PA'I SNYING PO'I MDO DPER BRJOD PA BSTAN PA 'DIS NI SEMS CAN GYI KHAMS MA LUS PA'I THOG MA MED PA'I SEMS RANG BZHIN GYIS GRUB PAS STONG PAS KUN NAS NYON MONGS PA'I CHOS GLO BUR BA NYID DANG THOG MA MED PA'I SEMS RANG BZHIN GYIS STONG PAS RNAM PAR BYANG BA'I CHOS LHAN CIG SKYES PA ZHES SO.,



### THE ASIAN CLASSICS INSTITUTE

### N DIAMOND MOUNTAIN UNIVERSITY

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Reading, Class Ten: The Twelve Deeds of the Buddha

NOTE: THIS IS ONLY A ROUGH PART OF THE READING, TO USE FOR TUCSON UTTARA TANTRA CLASS, FINAL DAY

The Whole Story

The teachings on vowed morality (vinaya) are an excellent source for the actual story of how the twelve deeds progress. (Although please remember many followers of the greater way interpret these events in a way which is quite different from that found in the lower schools.) One of the best Tibetan sources for the entire story is the following account from The String of Pearls, a Necklace for Master Scholars (ACIP electronic text S6848). This is a summary of the entire vinaya by the great textbook writer of Sera Jey Monastery, Sera Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen (1469-1546).

यार्शेश.त.शवर.शटश.भैश.र्थअ.क्र्यायोशेंटश.प्रेंत.तो शटश.भैश.प्रेंता.वी. इस्राचल्याः श्रीराचस्रेदायात्रा सहरायाच्युः यहिष्यानुः वयात्राचिष्या

Here is our third point from above, which is how—once he became enlightened—Lord Buddha taught the Dharma. We proceed in two steps: a general presentation, and then a more detailed explanation of each of the twelve deeds.

र्ट्टर्स्हो व्यापाकुट्ट्राक्ष्रम्या स्यापम्कीविद्यस्य विद्रा

## कुल से देव मुन मुन स्वयं दे के निया त्या या वित्र प्येव है।

Here is the first. According to the lesser vehicle, the entire period from the birth as Give of Light, the son of the potter, up to the birth as the king Siddhartha was all only the path of accumulation

য়र्ट्य-ट्रिश-ट्रे-योश-ट्रिश-ट

And this is true because then the prince Siddhartha goes to the Seat of the Diamond and—from the platform of the final stage of the fourth meditation level—goes all the way from the "heat" stage of the path of preparation up to the "knowledge that negativities can never again arise"; that is, enlightenment. All this he attains in a single sitting, and then reaches Buddhahood for the first time. The truth of this reasoning has already been established.

च्यार द्रिक्षे प्राप्त क्षेया क्षे

According though to the teachings of the greater way, it happens as we've already described it. That is, Buddha is already the enlightened Victor named Top of Power; he sends forth an emanation known as High One, Son of the Brahmin, and pays homage to the Buddha called Light Protector. He then deigns to take birth as High White-Top.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

A little digression: here is the very interesting part "we've already described," from the same text:

ॻॖऀॱॷॕढ़ऄॎॱॻॱॻॱॻॖ॔ॸॱॸॖऀ। ॻऻॶ॔ॴॱय़ॱॴक़ॖ॔ॴऄ॔ॱॸॻॹॖॸऄऻ

Here is our third section from above. The Buddha once took a birth as the youth named Cloud of the Dharma, in the Shining Palace of King Foe Slayer, located in the City of Lotuses.

स्याप्तः स्रोतः स्वायायः यद्याप्तः विद्यस्थितः स्वायायः स्वायः स

He paid homage to the Buddha named Light Maker, and made prayers. From this time up to the time of the Buddha known as The All-Seeing Guide, he made offerings to and paid honor to 77,000 Buddhas—thus amassing the two collections in an extraordinary way. And then he was able to attain total enlightenment as the Buddha named Top of Power.

चर्गार-क्रेवे क्षेत्र-प्रति कष्टि क्षेत्र-प्रति क्षेत्र-प्रति क्षेत्र-प्रति कष्णि क्षेत्र-प्रति कष्णि कष्णि कष्णि क्षेत्र-प्रति कष्णि क

Then, after a period of 30,000 years, the Buddha named Light Protector came to the world to the royal palace called Friendship. At this time our own Teacher emanated as High One, Son of the Brahmin; he made offerings to this Buddha of both gifts and honor.

चे. में. क्रु. क्

In his very last life then he pretended to take birth in the Heaven of Bliss, as High White-Top. Here he filled the hearts of his disciples with the holy Dharma.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

We return here to our original place in the text:

The second part from above, the more detailed explanation, has twelve parts. The first is the deed of the Buddha where he moved to our world from the Heaven of Bliss. Our presentation here will have two parts: how the Buddha, exhorted to do so by the other Buddhas, looked upon our world; and how he was beseeched by an assembly of divine beings and then responded to them.

त्रम्।

विवासः तत्रः हो।

Here is the first. The being named High White-Top was sitting, teaching the Dharma to the assembly of gods in the Heaven of Bliss. And then, through the blessings of the Buddhas of the ten directions, there was the sound of the cymbals of the deities, and it spoke to our Teacher these words:

યાર્સ્ટ-વેશના માર્ચ્યાના માર્સ્ટના માર્સ્ટન

We call upon you to heed us, you who have been able To accumulate great masses of merit, and thus with knowledge Shine forth with lightrays of infinite intellect and wisdom; You who possess power with no equal, and myriad skills; You, the one who was foretold by the Buddha, Light-Maker.

Urged to do so by these words, the Teacher looked upon our world, in the five different ways—and then he moved to our realm from the Heaven of Bliss.

Here are the five ways in which he looked upon the world. First he looked upon the lands—upon the city of Kapila, in the center of the Dzambu continent.

He looked upon the classes of people—upon the class of royalty.

He looked upon the clans, or peoples—upon the Ishvaku, the people called the Shakya.

He looked upon the mothers—upon the Maya Sudirsha ("Beautiful Goddess of Illusion), a being who was in fact completely free of any deception or illusion.

He looked upon the times—upon a time when the five degenerations were spreading in the world.

चत्। द्या अभ्यात्र होत्य अभ्यात्र होत्य होत्यात्र स्थात्र स्थात्य स्थात्य स्थात्र स्थात्य स्थात्य स्थात्य स्थात्य स्थात्य स्थात्य स्

The "five degenerations," by the way, are the following:

- —the degeneration of the age, meaning a time of conflict;
- —the degeneration of lifespans, meaning that period when the lifespans of humans are dropping, down to about a hundred years;
- —the degeneration of world view, meaning a time when people's views are completely wrong, and very difficult to change;
- —the degeneration of mental afflictions, meaning that they are now much stronger, and last longer;
- —the degeneration of beings, meaning that their minds and sense powers are much more difficult to rein in

श्री मीट्रियास्य अर्ग्ने क्षित्र प्राप्त प्रमान्य प्रमान

Here is the second point: how the Teacher was beseeched by an assembly of divine beings and then responded to them. Once the Buddha had decided to come into our world of Dzambu Ling, the gods said to him, "This is not a good time to pass to Dzambu Ling—if you do, we will be left without a teacher, and the teachings of the Three Groups of Six, the Eighteen Non-Buddhist Teachers, will begin to spread. This will make the minds of those living in Dzambu Ling unfit, and people will never achieve their goals.

Here by the way are the eighteen teachers mentioned. They consist of the six teachers of ideas; the six companions; and the six meditators.

The first group of six is made up of: the teacher named Completer; the Son of the Gods, Running Bull; the Child of Desire, Pure Victor; Keeper of the Cloth woven of the Hair of the Undefeatable One; Cow of Katebu; and the Naked One, Child of the Friend.

The second group of six is made up by: the Brahmin Victor of Causes; the Brahmin Excellent One; the Brahmin Finder of the Place; the Brahmin Time of the Pure One; the Brahmin Heart of the Lotus; and the Red Brahmin.

## उदा इट श्रेंट हेंद्र सेंट्स सेट्य प्टट द्वार्गे ।

The third group of six is made up by: Extreme Actions, Child of Confusion; Far Flyer, Child of the Skilled One; Pure Purity, the Runner; Victor over All, Son of the Brahmin; Rising One, Protector of Light, Matted Locks; and the master named "Free of Mental Affliction."

Here then is the reply that was given: the bodhisattva then taught these divine youths the Dharma, through a hundred and eight shining doors. Then he took his jeweled crown and set it on the head of the Undefeatable One: Maiteya. And he said, "My friends, the Undefeatable One will now teach you the Dharma; treat him well.

ह्ये में विश्वान्य स्थान्य स्

"For me now the time has come to go and try to discipline the disciples of Dzambu Ling. This is because I must cut off the rain of wrong views being taught by the non-Buddhists, and by whatever means necessary lead people to correct view." And so he left, and moved from the Heaven of Bliss.

चैयान्तर स्वरायायार स्वर्धित स्वराया स्वराय स्वराया स

## 4x-8E5-511

Here secondly we'll cover the deed of entering his mother's womb. At midnight on the fifteenth day of the waxing of the moon in the month of Saga, he undertook to enter into his mother's womb, into her readied belly, in the form of a bluish elephant that had six tusks, and a network of golden rays spread over its face.

Here third is the deed of taking birth. He stayed within the womb of his holy mother for a full ten months, and then on the tenth day of the waxing of the moon in the month of Wo—on the very special day of the convening of Gyalpur was born from the right side of his mother's chest, without being sullied in the least by any of the impurities normally found in the womb.

योश्यान्त्रम् व्याप्ति स्थान्त्रम् स्थान्त्रम् व्याप्ति स्थान्त्रम् व्याप्ति स्थान्त्रम् व्याप्ति स्थान्त्रम् व्याप्ति स्थान्त्रम् व्याप्ति स्थान्त्रम् व्याप्ति स्याप्ति स्थान्त्रम् व्याप्ति स्थान्ति स्यापति स्थान्ति स्थान्ति स्थान्ति स्थान्ति स्थान्ति स्थान्ति स्थानि स्यापिति स्थानि स्यापिति स्थानि स्यापिति स्थानि स्थानि स्थानि स्थानि स्थानि स्थानि

And then great assemblies of gods threw upon him flowers made of the five precious substances. Brahma and Shakra took the child up in the a cloth of Kashika silk. Ananda and Upananda made the offering of sacred bathing.

And then the Teacher said:

This is my final birth; now I will rip out, from their very roots, the

experiences of birth, and againg, and sickness, and death.

And then he took seven steps in each of the six directions; seven lotuses too grew below his feet as he walked in each direction.

भक्ष्यःम्बर्धः संस्थाः स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वर

On this occasion too the gods dropped down a rain of precious jewels from the sky, and a great light filled the entire world. The illnesses and sufferings of every being suddenly came to a stop, and their minds were filled with happiness. People suddenly achieved (Sanskrit: siddha) every beautiful thing and other goal (artha) that they had ever wished for, and so the child was given the name Prince Siddhartha.

र्गात्र तह्र प्रति स्रुप्त स्

The gods of the families approached, in order to make their offerings. The child was sitting like one who had taken a vow of silence (Skt: muni), among all those of his people—the Shakyas, who had the habit of indulging in meaningless talk—he alone was free of busyness of body and speech. And so too they named him Shakyamuni.

स्र्रा। स्रेत्र:क्र्यानार्श्वमन्त्रःग्रीनार्श्वरायार्श्वनात्रम्या स्रेत्रःस्राविनायार्थः

And because the great assemblies of gods came forth and bowed themselves down to the his lotus feet, he gained further the name of "God of the Gods."

रेदुःकुःविश्वश्रात्त्रीःभिकःस्वे वर्षुःकार्येकारुःमुश्चेकात्त्रा क्षेत्रात्त्रीःविरःतरःरे रियाः

## यी'सञ्चु'भेरु'क्षुस्र'द्रस्य देव'द्रद्र'सञ्चुर्द्र'सदे'सेट से से प्राप्त वार्ष है।

At this time too, a prince was born to each of the four lesser kings of the land; this was considered to have occurred because of the power of the miraculous signs that accompanied the Teacher's own birth, and so each was given a name to match.

र्राम्नायाम्याः मितान्त्रीः मुट्टा चर्ट्यामाः म्रा। वर्षिट्रा मान्याः प्रमायाः मान्याः प्रमायाः चिताः स्ट्रा म्राः प्रमायाः मिताः स्ट्राः स्ट्राः मिताः स्ट्राः स्ट्र

In Rajagirha, the son of Great Lotus was born, and given the name Essence of Form. In Kaushambi, the son of King Hundred Armies was named Splendor of the New Dawn. In Ujjayini, the son of Infinite Rim of the Wheel was named Self-Appearance of Fearsome Power. In Kosala, the son of Brahma's Gift was named King of Light.

नेति कें में ने निम्म स्वतं विश्व स्वतं विश्व स्वतं विश्व स्वतं स

At that time as well there was a great master, possessed of the five different kinds of clairvoyance, living in the Himalayan Mountains. His name was "The Black One." He saw these extraordinary signs, and then through his miracle power travelled to the city of Kapila.

रयः मृ : चुरः क्रायः र्वायः यात्रः क्षायः यात्रः क्षार्यः क्षायः व्यक्षितः स्विधः व्यक्षितः दे।। चुरः क्ष्यः क्षेत्रः क्षायः द्वायः यात्रः क्षायः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः स्विधः व्यक्षितः दि।।

And he spoke the following prophecy:

If this bodhisattva remains in the home life, then he will become a wheel emperor: king of the world. If though he leaves the home life, he will

become a fully enlightened Buddha.

# शरशःमिशःशं तर्वीरः म् अश्वीरः त्र्राश्चितः त्र्रीरः मिला तर्वीरः तर्वः रेशः श्रुवः त्राश्चरः त्रायः र

And then he added the following to the prophecy:

The fact is, though, that the days of strife in the world are not a time when a wheel emperor would appear. As such, he will certainly become a Buddha.

प्रमुख्य क्रिया मिल्य क्रिया मिल्या मिल्य क्रिया मिल्या मिल

Here next is the fourth deed, where the Teacher pretends to play. And so he went through the pretended motions of learning how to write from the master teacher named "Friend to All." He mastered skills such as archery, and swimming, and taming wild elephants. In these ways he established himself as one without an equal, as someone who could overcome the arrogant, by virtue of his superior nature and power.

स्रमान्त्रंत्र स्रित्वार्त्तः त्रित्त्रः नृत्वा निष्या स्रितः न्या निष्या स्रितः न्या निष्या स्रितः न्या निष्य स्रमान्त्रंत्र स्रित्वा स्रमान्त्रः स्रमान्तः स्र

Next is the fifth deed, where the Teacher comes to the circle of queens. The Teacher wanted to benefit living beings in an infinite number of different ways, using even

worldly activities to do so. And so until his 29th year he spent his time with the assembly of queens—with daughters of the throneholders of the Shakyas such as the Lady of Nurturing and the Lady of the Animals of the Wild.

त्रश्चित्राचेत्राचित्राच्ये स्वाप्त्राच्यात्त्र्यात्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात् स्वाप्त्राच्यात् स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात् स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात् स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात् स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्राच्यात् स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्ते स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्ते स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्ते स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्ते स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्त्रे स्वाप्ते स्व

Here sixth is the deed of leaving the home life. The bodhisattva remained in the palace until his 29th year. And then, due to the blessings of all the Buddhas of the ten directions, he heard the sound of divine cymbals. They spoke to him in the following verse, urging him to leave from the home life, and come to the homeless life.

## È'345'51

विश्वास्त्रस्त्रम्यः स्त्रम्यः स्त्

### |ৰ্কিম'মাম্যুদ্ম।

And here is what they said:

The cycle of suffering is like a vase full of hornets;
The three realms are impermanent, like an autumn cloud.
Seeing people being born and die is like
Watching actors enter and exit a stage.
Their lives pass by like a flash of lightning,
Moving as fast as a waterfall.
Only a Buddha is deathless, free of all grief,
Only a Buddha can fill those dying of thirst
With the sweet nectar of deathlessness.
Remember now those highest words—
The resolution that long ago you made:
Run now, leave this exquisite city
With all the speed you can.

## मुन्नान्त्र । भूनान्त्र न्यान्त्र न्यान्त्र मुन्नान्य न्यान्त्र स्वान्त्र स्वान्य स्वान्त्र स्वान्त्र स्वान्त्र स्वान्त्र स्वान्त्र स्वान्त्र स्व

Then the bodhisattva went to the eastern gate of the city of Kapila, and saw a person tormented by the suffering of old age.

He went to the southern gate, and saw another person tortured by sickness.

He went to the western gate, and saw another person who had been struck down by death.

चुरार्थम् अवायाः इय्यात्रात्वेदः वर्ष्ण्यायाः व्याप्त्रात्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्रात्याः व्याप्त्याप्त्रात्याः व्याप्त्रात्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्रात्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्रात्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त्याः व्याप्त

And then he went to northern gate, and saw a beautiful, heart-stealing sight: a monk wrapped in the golden robes. Because of all he'd seen, he went to his father and said respectfully, "I would like to leave the home life." His father refused him permission, and set a circle of soldiers around the entire city of Kapila as guards. But then Shakra came and stupefied the entire body of troops, sending them into a deep sleep. And then he urged the bodhisattva on, with the following words:

|र्स्वयान्यस्व प्रमान्यस्व प्रमान्यस्व प्रमान्यस्व प्रमान्यस्व प्रमान्यस्व प्रमान्यस्य प्

You are a higher one, in your power and effort; Come now, rise quickly. The time has finally come to leave— To achieve your matchless, final enlightenment, And free all living beings, tortured by their lives.

म्बर्गान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त स्थान्त्र स्था

And then four divine youths took him up on a palanquin, and eventually they came to the site of a holy stupa, or offering shrine. He gave his conveyance and all his ornaments over to his attendants, and then cut his hair off himself. Shakra offered him golden robes; he put them on, and left the home life.

प्रथम् प्राप्त स्क्री स्ट्रिय प्राप्त स्वित स्वाप्त स

Here next is the seventh deed, of undertaking spiritual hardships. The Teacher wanted to communicate to later generations that they would have to undertake limitless spiritual hardships in order to attain enlightenment. And so for six years he sat on the banks of the Nairanjana River, engrossed in the deep meditation known as "the concentration that fills the sky." In this way he attained, fully, the perfection of deep concentration.

During this period, the bodhisattva became emaciated—he began to look like a corpse. His father, King Shuddhodana, accompanied by his retinue, came by and saw him, and cried aloud in dismay. The bodhisattva came out of his single-pointed concentration and put his father's heart at ease with the following words:

|भ्र.श्रु.स्यूम्पूर्याचार्यात्म्यः त्याः स्थ्यः । |भ्र.श्रु.स्यूम्पूर्याचार्याः स्थ्यः त्याः स्थ्यः ।

## ٳٵٷڿ؆ۼ؆ڂڟٵ؆ڂڟؖۮ؊ڟڮٳ ٳڿڎڽؚڗ؉ۼ؈ڟ؉ڟڎڞڟ ٳڂڎۺ؆ۼ؆ڂڟڟ؉ڂڟٷ ٳڂۿڰ؞؆ڿ؆ۼۺڮڟٳۿ

It is a possibility
That one day the constellations
Of sun and stars may fall to earth.
And though right now
I'm only a normal person,
I will never die again.
And so never should you grieve for me;
It will not be long before what you see
Is a fully enlightened, awakened one.

ह्रीटश्चर्यात्र्यं याश्चरम्यो अर्चा अर्चा अर्चा अर्चा स्ट्राम्य स

Then from the town came the maiden Excellent Born; she paid honor to the Teacher by offering him milk that was refined from the milk of a thousand different cows, pouring one into the other. This had an effect of purifying the nature that his body had had up to then, and it took on a golden color, giving off rays of light.

The eighth deed was that of coming to the Heart of Enlightenment. The Teacher thought to himself that, when he attained the diamond-like stage of concentration, and then achieved the unsurpassed state of enlightenment, none of the ordinary people around him would be capable of learning from him. And so he went alone to Vajrasana, the Seat of the Diamond, and received from the hay-seller named Trashi a bundle of freshly cut hay. He made himself a seat of the hay at the foot of the Bodhi tree, and went into meditation. He made a resolution that he would attain enlightenment itself:

|बेशस्य स्थान्य स्थान

Here on this seat, my body may rot and dry; My bones and skin and flesh may drop away; But until I attain the state of enlightenment, Difficult to achieve, even in many eons, I refuse to move from this seat.

ग्री:यर्त्र-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्य-विद्यान्त्य-विद्यान्य-विद्यान्य-विद्यान्य-विद्यान्य-विद्यान्य-विद्यान्य-विद्यान्य-विद

The ninth deed was that of subduing the demons. The Teacher wanted to show disciples of later generations that anyone who hopes to achieve any extraordinary goal must expect to be attacked by a great number of different obstacles; and that they should forge ahead to the final goal, without allowing themselves to be affected. And so from the miraculous

strand of hair at the spot between his eyebrows he sent forth rays of light.

This light went out and shone throughout the entire world—especially in places like the divine mansions of the demons. Legions of demons—a nearly infinite mass of warriors—rose up and sped towards the bodhisattva. They included the Evil One and their followers—monstrous beings like the evil spirits, sea devils, witches, tormented spirits, flesh eaters and so on.

याद्या है में में के स्कूर के स्वीता के स्वीता है के स्वीता है के स्वीता है से स्व

Some of them picked up whole mountains and threw them at the Teacher. Others attacked him with cannons and various machines of war. Others shot arrows, or threw spears, or a whole variety of other weapons. But all of them turned into a gentle shower of flower blooms.

After that came demonic maidens—the three known as the Girl of the Scales, and the Girl of Pleasure, and the Girl of Alluring Song. They laid various snares and tried to deceive

the bodhisattva, but he turned upon them a special form of meditation called the "concentration on the disgusting." With this he was able to see that all three as they would age, and as full of rotting guts, and so they were unable to block him from his goal.

And then lastly the Evil One approached the bodhisattva and said,

If this is all the good karma that you have, how can you even remotely hope to attain freedom?

The bodhisattva replied,

You have been able to perform but one of those rituals where you make offerings in an uninterrupted stream; and so thus you have become the most powerful worldly god of the desire realm. I, on the other hand, have performed this same ritual for more times than numbers can count. For me, achieving freedom will be no difficult thing at all.

And the Evil One continued.

You claim to be witness to the fact that I have performed this ritual of the uninterrupted offerings but once. But there is no one here to bear witness to your own claim that you have performed this same ritual a countless

number of times.

निष्यास्त्र स्था निष्यास्त्र स्यास्त्र स्यास्त्र स्यास्त्र स्था निष्यास्त्र स्यास्त्र स्यास्त्र

With this, the bodhisattva pressed his right hand to the ground, and said:

The earth itself is home to every living being; It is completely impartial, and never feels Imposed upon by the things that are moving Or simply standing still on it. This earth is my witness then That I tell no lie. Come now earth, And witness to my words.

तर्रेथ.श.योश्रम्भ्री.शर्य्या.श्रम्थ.श.र्थ.स्रीट.स्रीट.थ्या.घण.श्रम्भ्रम.थ्या स्या.योलश्रम.श्रम्थ.पानस्यश्रमश्रम.श.र्थ.स्रीट.स्रीट.योल्श.सयु.योश्रम.यश्रम.श्रम्

And then he struck the earth with his right hand, and the land quaked in all of the six directions. Then from deep below the ground, and the golden body of the Goddess of the Earth, whose name was the Lady Who Teaches, came up out of the ground to her waist. She joined her palms respectfully at her breast and said,

। शुरुषातुः केन भेरिन निवन में । विनि ग्रीय है। सून सूय भाने निवन है। । विनि नी

प्रतियाः हेत्र श्रम्भं वित्र श्रम्भः वित्र श्रमः वित्र श्री वित्र वित्र श्री वित्र श्री

O great being, this is exactly the way it is. It is all just as you've said it was. All these things have I seen with my own eyes. And yet it is the Conqueror alone who can witness to the entire world, to all the living creatures here, along with the worldly gods as well.

And with this, she disappeared.

प्राचुरार्ख्या विश्वार्यात्राण्यात्रहेत्रत्या इयान्याःश्च्याः योश्चान्याः विश्वार्याः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्याः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्याः विश्वार्याः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्याः विश्वार्यायः विश्वार्यायः विश्

Then the bodhisattva used a particular kind of loving concentration to impart a blessing to the demon's mind. Because of this, the entire mass of demons bowed down to the bodhisattva, and praised him in the lines that include, "You possess a holy body of perfect purity; your form is supremely beautiful..."

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

Translator's note: This verse and others like it are found in the sojong, or monthly confession ceremony for monks and nuns. The full verse mentioned goes as follows:

|अम्बिर्म्स्य अक्ट्र्यान्य अर्थ्यात्य अर्थ्य अर्थ्यात्य अर्थ्य अर्थ्य अर्थात्य अर्थ्य अर्थे अर्थे

You possess a holy body of perfect purity; Your form is supremely beautiful. The ocean of your wisdom stands Towering over the world like The central mountain made of gold; Your fame blazes in glory throughout Every one of the three different realms. We bow ourselves down to you, Our Protector, who reached the goal supreme.

\* \* \* \* \* \* \*

ह्यामामह्यामान्त्राचान्त्रचन्त्रचन्त्रचान्त्रचान्त्रचान्त्रचन्त्रचन्त्रचन्त्रचन

Here next is the tenth deed, which was achieving enlightenment. Up to his 29th year, the Teacher remained in the palace. He then undertook six years of spiritual hardship, which brought him to his 35th year. And in this year, on the fifteenth day of the month of Saga, in the final period of the night (that is, after the first five watches of the day were over, counting three watches to the daytime and three watches to the nighttime), he reached the unsurpassable state of enlightenment.

यःश्वेंद्रायराण्यः विराक्ष्यात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्र त्यात्रेंद्रायराण्येयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्रेयात्र

As The Foundation Scripture states,

After the bodhisattva had reached his 29th year, he spent six years in spiritual hardships. And then he realized, he saw directly, the nectar of deathlessness.

सर्देन'यर'तुर'कुरायदे'सर्दे'त्यका न्यात्ती'बुन'सवद'स'त्यावायास'सेर्'यदे'प्ये

## विश्वासद्वान्युकार्स्य विश्वाम्युद्यायदे ध्रिम्

The Sutra of Reaching Enlightenment too says,

In the final watch of the night, he achieved the wisdom free of every impurity.

Next is the eleventh deed: turning the wheel of the Dharma. By daybreak on the fifteenth day of the month of Saga, the Teacher had achieved total enlightenment. He then wanted to check and see if there were any disciples, any vessels fit for his teaching. And so he uttered the words, "The profound; peace; that which is free of all elaboration; the clear light; the unproduced"—and then for a length of seven periods of seven days each he simply left it all alone; that is, in the perceptions of normal people of the world, he chose not to speak the Dharma.

Now during the first period of seven days, he stayed at the foot of the Bodhi tree, and divine youths came to him with offerings and words of praise. During the second seven days, he went for a stroll around a million galaxies. During the third seven days, he simply sat and stared at the Bodhi tree, without blinking once.

चबु.त.ज.चर्येच.ग्री.मै.अष्ट्र्यु.वचीत्र.टे.वक्या.तर.त्रह्र्या के.त.ज.प्री.चरेट.

#### In-Depth Course I: Teachings of the Future Buddha Reading Ten (incomplete): The Twelve Deeds of the Buddhas

# चर्नाः नाम्याः शुंच। तुनाः यः यो द्वाः मे ते दे दे दे दे दे दे दे दे विवाय।

During the fourth seven days, he went for a walk along the shores of the ocean to the east and the ocean to the west. During the fifth, he travelled to the realm of the serpentine creature known as Muchilinda. During the sixth, he sat at the foot of a nyagrodha tree.

During the seventh, he sat at the foot of a drulgyu tree. The merchants named Gagun and Sangpo offered him honey and brown sugar, and he accepted in a sage's bowl given to him by the Four Great Kings. Then he spoke a prophecy to them that they would come to be the Victors of Honey. This prophecy is contained in the verses that begin with, "The fortune of the gods, and fulfillment of every goal..."

And then—mainly so that other disciples would follow their lead, and all because of the prayers that the Teacher had made long before—the worldly god named "Brahma of the Topknot," with a retinue of 6,800,000 Brahmas, approached him. They offered him a golden wheel with a thousand spokes, and begged him to turn the wheel of the Dharma.

#### In-Depth Course I: Teachings of the Future Buddha Reading Ten (incomplete): The Twelve Deeds of the Buddhas

Next came Shakra, along with his own followers, who first paid deep obeisance to the Teacher. They offered him a golden mandala that was 75 miles across, and also begged him to turn the wheel.

र्श्वाश्वास्त्रित्वः स्थान्तिः स्थानिः स्था

And so, on the fourth day of the month of Chutu, the Teacher journeyed to the land of Varanasi. Here there stood the thrones of the Thousand Buddhas. He made prostrations, and then circumambulations, around the thrones of Fear of the Cycle; Golden Silence; and Light Protector [the three Buddhas gone before him]. Then he seated himself upon the fourth throne, and performed the deed of turning the wheel of the Dharma, for the Excellent Group of Five and other disciples as well.

यो प्रम् क्रिंश क्री प्रिंग क्रिंग क्रिंग क्रिंग क्रिंग क्रिंग प्रम् क्रिंग क्

Here last is the twelfth deed, of entering into final nirvana. The Teacher then turned the wheel of the Dharma extensively, starting from his 35th year—the year in which he became enlightened—and continuing for the next 46 years.

र्वाट ल्या नक्षेत्र है। व्या नक्षेत्र है।

And then, at the age of eighty, on the full moon—the fifteenth day—of the month of Saga, he pretended to pass into his final nirvana.

Diamond Mountain University	
n-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha	Name Place Date Track: E T S TS
Homework, Class One: About the Text	
) In this course, we will study the fifth of the Buddha. Name this book in English and Sanskrit; ame. (Sanskrit & Tibetan tracks spell out in these leads to the state of the	then give a short explanation of the
2) Arya Asanga was granted this fifth book from the visited Maitreya's paradise. How does the story ummarize really the three crucial ideas of worldview	of how he came to make this visit

(continued on the back)

b)

4) Arya Asanga's coming into the world was predicted by Lord Buddha himself, in the <i>Root Tantra of Gentle Voice, Manjushri</i> . How does this prediction relate to the fact that the five books of Maitreya may seem to contradict each other?
5) After returning from Lord Maitreya's paradise, Arya Asanga spread the Dharma widely. At one point he was tested by a king, who mentally asked him six questions about the sutras on the perfection of wisdom. Three of these questions related to the meaning of the sutras, rather than their wording. The first of these three is particularly important; explain it briefly.
6) According to tradition, what levels had Arya Nagarjuna, Arya Asanga, and Maitreya reached during their lifetimes?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on each of the six questions of the king.  Debate assignment: Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more friends.

The Asian Classics Institute
Diamond Mountain University
In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha
Homework, Class Two: The Seven Diamond-Like Visions

Latter Part. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks add these.)

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

(e)

1) Why is the Sanskrit version of the obeisance found at the beginning of Master Asanga's explanation of the *Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series* significant?

2) Name the seven diamond-like visions which form the basis for the structure of the

Name \_\_\_\_\_\_Place\_\_\_\_\_

Track: E T S TS

(continued on back)

Date

	(f)	
	(g)	
		Three Jewel has two forms: deceptive and ultimate. Give a brief two forms for each of the Jewels:
	(a)	Buddha Jewel
	(1)	deceptive form:
	(2)	ultimate form:
	(b) Dharma	a Jewel
	(1)	deceptive form:
	(2)	ultimate form:
	(c) Sangha	Jewel:
	(1)	deceptive form:
	(2) ultimate	e form:
		gic behind the order of the seven diamond-like visions (as opposed to d the number of these visions).
		ment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on the logic behind the diamond-like visions.
Debate friends.	_	t: Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more

À	Th

		^		
d	≾		Z	4

Diamond Mountain University	
In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha	Name Place Date Track: E T S TS
Homework, Class Three: Becoming a Shelter for the World	1
1) Describe three qualities possessed by an ideal student for Then describe one negative trait that they <i>don't</i> possess. A qualities the reason why a perfect student develops them.	· ·
(a)	
(b)	
(c)	
(d)	
2) The actual name in both Sanskrit and Tibetan for the "Je combination of the words "rare" and "supreme." The Lareasons behind this combination. List any three of the Sanskrit tracks include these.)	atter Part of the Series gives six
(a)	
(b)	
(c)	
	(continued on back)

3) Briefly explain the difference between result refuge and cause refuge, then describe the original passage from a sutra by Lord Buddha himself from which this concept is drawn.
4) In the <i>Commentary on the Latter Part</i> , the Buddha Jewel is said to possess six great
qualities. Three of these relate to achieving ones own ultimate goals, and three relate to achieving the ultimate goals of others. Name and describe the three that relate to ones own goals. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks name in these languages, and describe in English.)
(a)
(b)
(c)
5) Now do the same for the three qualities that relate to others' goals. (T,S)
(a)
(b)
(c)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on the six qualities you

need to help yourself and others. *Debate assignment:* Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more friends..

# Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha  Homework, Class Four: <i>The Sun of the Holy Dharma</i>	Name Place Date Track: E T S TS
1) In a very famous verse from the fourth chapter of the <i>Comme</i> Lord Maitreya uses the metaphor of a disease to explain the four four parts of the metaphor. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks use metaphor.)	arya truths. Explain the
(a)	
(b)	
(c)	
(d)	
2) Back to the first chapter: having discussed the Buddha Jewel, A to describe the Dharma Jewel. Gyaltsab Je compares the relation to a yawn. Explain!	
<ul><li>3) Name the two parts of the "real" Dharma Jewel, and give exam</li><li>(a)</li></ul>	ples of each.
(b)	

(continued on back)

4)	The truth of cessation itself includes two parts. Name them.
	(a)
	(b)
5)	Give three qualities of the natural purity of the truth of cessation.
	(a)
	(b)
	(c)
the bo	Lord Maitreya say that the purity which is achieved depends on the "light of wisdom" knowledge of an arya both during and just after the direct perception of emptiness. How down to this "sun," because it destroys the darkness of ignorance and thus frees upon pain. Describe the six steps by which this freedom, according to Lord Maitreya test place.
	(a)
	(b)
	(c)
	(d)
	(e)
	(f)
	person which gives you the most trouble in your life, and how you might apply the size

or person which gives you the most trouble in your life, and how you might apply the six steps just mentioned in stopping this problem.

Debate assignment: Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more friends.

The Asian Classics Institute
Diamond Mountain University
In-Depth Course 1
Teachings of the Future Buddha

Name			
Place			
Date			
Track: E	T	S	TS

Homework, Class Five: Death and Realized Beings

1) Quote the famous verse from the *Commentary on the Latter Part* which describes how realized beings (aryas, or those who have seen emptiness directly) relate to death. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks, entire verse as well.)

2 The textbooks of Sera Mey Monastery written by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568) say that someone can be the truth of suffering, and yet not possess the gross form of the "demon of the heaps." Name the type of person they refer to. (T)

3	Choney Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748), the Sera Mey master who wrote our commentary to the <i>Diamond Cutter Sutra</i> , says that someone can possess "an impurity involved with mental afflictions" but not possess the truth of suffering. Name the type of person he refers to.
4	In his description of how to attain the rainbow body, especially at death, Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419) explains that something else must come before. Name this thing.
5	In one of his commentaries on the tantra called the "Secret Collection" (Guhya Samaja), Je Tsongkapa states that there is something even more powerful than a bodhisattva who has seen emptiness directly. What does he mention?
6	Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye, in a debate about how bodhisattvas who have seen emptiness directly still take rebirth, suggests that there would be reasons why-according to the opponent at leastthey might do so through mental afflictions. Describe these two.
	Can a person be free of ever again taking birth through the power of karma and mental flictions, and yet still possess a mental affliction?

8	How does the author of the Sera Je textbook series, Sera Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen (1469-1546), address the problem that—if they posess seeds for ignorance—bodhisattva aryas would possess mental-affliction obstacles?
9	How, in the teachings on the Steps of the Path (Lam Rim), is the famous quotation above used?
cc	<i>Teditation assignment:</i> 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on the various debates evered in the class and reading.  The debate assignment: Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more
	ends.

The Asian Classics Institute	
Diamond Mountain University	
In-Depth Course 1	Nama
Teachings of the Future Buddha	Name
	Place
	Date
	Track: E T S TS
Homework, Class Six: Nine Images for the	e Concealed Buddha
In traditional explanations of Buddha-nature, or of our own, there are a group of famous ver <i>Commentary on the Latter Part</i> .	<del>_</del>
These verses present nine images to describe heach one of the images and then explain it, remarks which prevents it from being revealed to us. (To of the simile in these languages.)	nembering to give the specific obstacle
1)	
2)	
3)	

4)	
5)	
6)	
7)	
8)	
9)	
Homework assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation going through the ni images and thinking about all the details of what they mean. Try to visualize each ima in your own room, in your own being.	ne



# Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya
Homework, Class Seven: Buddha-Nature is Emptiness
1) There are a variety of names in Sanskrit and Tibetan for "Buddha-nature." Give any three of them, with their English translation. (Sanskrit and Tibetan tracks write in those languages.)
(a)
(b)
(c)
2) Give the words with which Lord Buddha himself, 2500 years ago, spoke of emptiness as He began the discussion of Buddha-nature in the <i>Middle-Length Sutra on the Perfection of Wisdom</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
3) Quote two of the lines from <i>The Ornament of Realizations</i> in which Lord Maitreya, 16 centuries ago, described Buddha-nature. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

4) In one of the most famed commentaries on Maitreya's teachings, the Indian master Haribhadra (from the 9 <sup>th</sup> Century) gave a concise definition of Buddha-nature. Quote it (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
5) Give the technical definition of "Buddha-nature." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
<ul><li>6) Give the three types of Buddha-nature; and an example for each. (Tibetan track give the types in Tibetan. Sanskrit track add Sanskrit for the first type.)</li><li>(a)</li></ul>
(b)
(c)
7) Now give the definitions of the first two types of Buddha-nature from the last question.
(a)
(b)
(Continued on next page)

8) Lama Umapa is the famous teacher of Je Tsongkapa who acted as an intermediary between his student and Gentle Voice (Manjushri). In his collection of texts on this Angel, Lama Umapa describes how the five different wisdoms of an Enlightened Being mark the final transformation of the five different heaps and the purification of five sets of negative emotions. List these three items for each of the five types of wisdom.
(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(e)
Homework and meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on parts of yourself that will turn into the Buddha you are to become (if you're not already!).



## Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Homework, Class Eight: Other Schools on Buddha Nature
1) Describe how the Detailists—the Abhidharma School—explain Buddha-nature, and why. (Sanskrit and Tibetan tracks give the description in these languages.)
2) State how the Mind-Only School describes Buddha-nature, and then how they distinguish between the two classical types of Buddha-nature. (S, T for description of Buddha-nature.)

3) List the two principal works that we will use for our presentation of the idea of Buddha-nature according to the Tibetan school of "other-emptiness" (shentong); also name the two authors, and their dates. (Tibetan track in Tibean.)

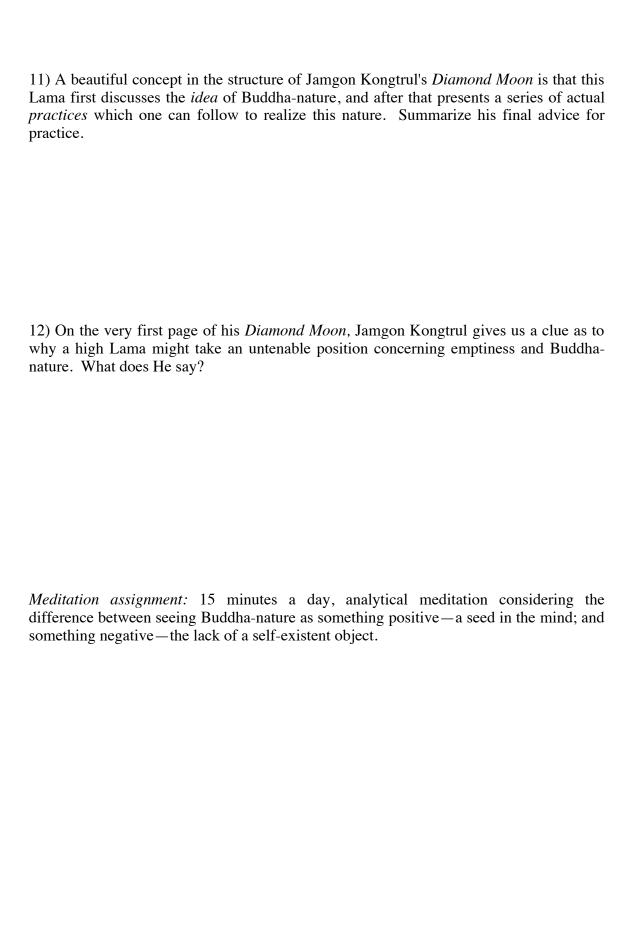
(a)

(b)

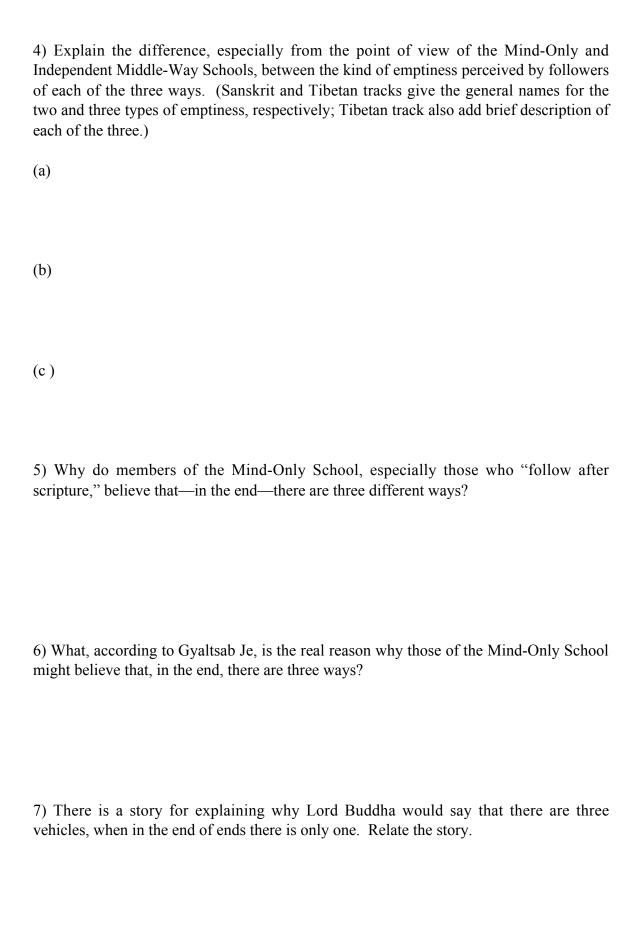
(please see the back)

4) According to Jamgon Kongtrul, there are three great Tibetan fathers of the other- emptiness traditions. Name them and give their dates.
(a)
(b)
(c)
5) The Tibetan school of "other-emptiness" is tied to the Jonangpa tradition. Explain the name "Jonangpa" and relate a little about the history of this lineage.
6) Give an explanation of what the "other" (shen) in the expression "other-emptiness"
(shentong) means.
7) How does the idea of "other-emptiness" ( <i>shentong</i> ) relate to the Buddha-nature which
is the subject of our class?
(continued on next page)

8) How does Jonangpa himself (Master Sherab Gyeltsen) describe the two kinds of Buddha-nature?
9) The members of the Jonangpa School differentiate between "great" followers of the Middle Way (Madhyamika) and "regular" followers of the Middle Way, grouping these last together with followers of the three lower schools of classical Indian Buddhism: the Detailists (Abhidharma schools); Sutrists (logic schools); and Yogists (Mind-Only School). Explain how they draw the distinction between their own "great" version of the Middle Way, and the "regular" Middle Way and other groups.
10) Give four criticisms of the "other-emptiness" and Jonangpa ideas of Buddha-nature mentioned by Gyaltsab Je in his explanation of <i>The Commentary on the Latter Part (Uttara Tantra)</i> .
(a)
(b)
(c)
(d)
(u)
(please see the back)



8) The debate over how many ways in the end there are, like all of Lord Buddha's teachings, has application to our modern life. Describe this application, and state two considerations that we will want to keep in mind.
9) Suppose a practitioner is attracted to one of the two lower ways or vehicles, and uses it successfully to reach a lower nirvana. <i>The Latter Part</i> says that in the end all paths lead to one; how then does a person like this move up to the one path?
10) The question of whether all paths lead into one brings up the larger issue of what the final end of the paths is like; which in turn raises the question of how it all began. Choney Lama quotes a metaphor to describe the end and beginning of the cycle of suffering—describe this metaphor.
Debate assignment: Remember to review this class at least once before the next class, by sitting down with a friend over a cup of coffee or tea and simply discussing what was said.
Meditation assignment: Sit down for 15 minutes a day and do an analytical meditation about the worldview of karma, emptiness, and compassion, along with different skillful means in which you might present this worldview to more people, as Lord Buddha did with the presentation of "lower" ways.



Λ	

/	\
M	$\rangle$

# Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya	Name Place Date Track: E T S TS	
Homework, Class Nine: In the End, All Paths Are One		
1) Name the three ways or vehicles that relate to the discussion in <i>The Latter Part</i> about there being, in the end, one way. Also explain the names of these three ways. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks add those languages.)		
(a)		
(b)		
(c)		
2) Explain the difference in motivation, and thus the goals, of for	ollowers of the three ways.	
3) Explain the difference in core teachings used by followers of	the three ways.	



## Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1
Teachings of the Future Ruddh

Homework, C	Class Ten: The Twelve Deeds of the Buddha
) Name the t	twelve deeds of the Buddha.
1)	
2)	
3)	
4)	
5)	
6)	
7)	
8)	
9)	
10)	
11)	
12)	

2) What moves, from where, but not from where, and for what reason, when the Buddha undertakes these twelve deeds? (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks answer in those languages.)

(continued)

3) Why does Lord Buddha come to our particular realm?
4) According to some ways of counting the twelve deeds, the Buddha undertakes another deed before the traditional first, which is then combined with the second. Name this new first deed.
5) Give and explain the two well-known names that Lord Buddha received upon his birth.
6) Compare how those of the lower way, the greater way, and the secret way describe the level the Buddha was on as he went through the twelve deeds.
7) There are two positions as to the deed the Buddha was performing when he attained "automatic ordination" as a full monk. State them.
(continued)

8) Why, according to the Detailist School, was Lord Buddha forced to endure six years of spiritual hardship as the seventh deed?
9) Name the four demons that are defeated as the ninth deed, and describe a position of Je Tsongkapa on when they are actually stopped.
10) Are all the twelve deeds of Shakyamuni Buddha performed by Shakyamuni Buddha?
11) Speculate a bit on how each of the twelve deeds may represent a message from Lord Buddha to us on how to conduct each stage of our own life, over the course of our life.
(continued)

12) When Lord Buddha came out of his holy mother's womb, he took seven steps in each of the six directions of space. Lotuses appeared below his feet with each step, and he made a high proclamation in each direction. Give the famous line that He spoke as he stepped to the west. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
Debate assignment: Remember to review this class at least once before the review class, by sitting down with a friend over a cup of coffee or tea and simply discussing what was said.
Meditation assignment: Sit down for 15 minutes a day, and do a review meditation on the series of twelve deeds, and how each one is a message to us.



## Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha

Homework and Ouiz Master, Class One: About the Text (Quiz questions are marked with an asterisk.)

1) In this course, we will study the fifth of the five books of Maitreya, the coming Buddha. Name this book in English and Sanskrit; then give a short explanation of the name. (Sanskrit & Tibetan tracks spell out in these languages.)

The name of the book in English is "Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series, in the Greater Way." In Sanskrit this is "Mahayana Uttara Tantra Shastra," or "Uttara Tantra" for short. The "series" here refers to the three progressive turnings of the wheel of the Dharma by Lord Buddha. The "latter part" of the series refers to the second and third turnings of the wheel, which are devoted to the beliefs of the two great schools of the mahayana, or greater way: the Middle-Way and Mind-Only Schools, respectively. The book is a commentary which explains the primary difference between these two schools, which is how they present the idea of emptiness.

### महायानोत्तरतन्त्रशास्त्र

maha-ya-nottaratantrasha-stra

# म्रयात्राक्षेत्र स्यात्रीत्र स्वास्त्र स्व

thekpa chenpo gyu lamay tenchu

\*2) Arya Asanga was granted this fifth book from the coming Buddha, Maitreya, when he visited Maitreya's paradise. How does the story of how he came to make this visit summarize really the three crucial ideas of worldview?

Arya Asanga meditated in a cave for 12 years, in order to see and learn from Maitreya, but he was completely unable to do so. He then gave up and left the cave. On the way to the nearest town, he found a wounded dog, and made selfless efforts to save the animal-thus gaining compassion (the first great idea). This and his twelve years of effort created the karma (which is the second great idea) to see the dog as Maitreya. This was only possible because both the dog and Maitreya were empty of being any particular way from their own side (which is the third great idea).

- 3) We will use two great explanations of this book during the course. Give their names, authors, and dates of the authors. (S,T)
  - (1) The "Complete Explanation of the Commentary on the Latter Part," written by Arya Asanga himself (350 AD)

उत्तरतन्त्रव्याख्या आर्य असंग uttaratantravya-khya- a-rya asan.ga

क्रिंट.धि.शरु.४श.तर.यर्वट.त। दलवाश.त.ह्याश.शरी

gyu lamay nampar shepa pakpa tokme

(2) "A Treatise on the Commentary on the Latter Part," written by Gyaltsab Je (1364-1432)

कुराज्ञातेंगा कुवार्क्याहे। gyu latik gyaltsab je

\*4) Arya Asanga's coming into the world was predicted by Lord Buddha himself, in the *Root Tantra of Gentle Voice, Manjushri*. How does this prediction relate to the fact that the five books of Maitreya may seem to contradict each other?

In the prediction, Lord Buddha says that Arya Asanga "will, in many different ways, distinguish between the literal and figurative meanings of the sutras." Distinguishing between what the Buddha said and what the Buddha meant is perhaps one of Arya Asanga's most important tasks, since the first three of the five books of Maitreya describe emptiness according to the Mind-Only School, while the latter two explain in according to the Middle-Way School—and thus seem to be in contradiction.

5) After returning from Lord Maitreya's paradise, Arya Asanga spread the Dharma widely. At one point he was tested by a king, who mentally asked him six questions about the sutras on the perfection of wisdom. Three of these questions related to the meaning of the sutras, rather than their wording. The first of these three is particularly important; explain it briefly.

In the first of the three questions about the meaning of the sutras on the perfection of wisdom, the king mentally asks Arya Asanga whether foundation or storehouse consciousness, the place where the mental seeds of our past deeds are planted, exists in a substantial way. That is to say, it is easy to understand that all the objects projected by our mind as these seeds ripen are therefore, in a way, less than real or substantial. But what about the "projector" or storehouse consciousness itself? It would seem that it at least should exist in and of itself. But, as Arya Asanga notes, it does not.

\*6) According to tradition, what levels had Arya Nagarjuna, Arya Asanga, and Maitreya reached during their lifetimes?

Arya Nagarjuna is said to have reasched the first bodhisattva level, achieving the wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta), and the direct perception of emptiness. Arya Asanga is said to have reached the third bodhisattva level, and Maitreya the tenth.

*Meditation assignment:* 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on each of the six questions of the king.

*Debate assignment:* Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more friends.



## Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha

Homework and Quiz Master, Class Two: The Seven Diamond-Like Visions (Quiz questions are marked with an asterisk.)

1) Why is the Sanskrit version of the obeisance found at the beginning of Master Asanga's explanation of the Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series significant?

Interestingly, the Sanskrit version of this obeisance differs from the Tibetan translation. The latter says "I bow down to all the Buddhas and bodhisattvas," whereas the original says "Om; I bow down to the glorious Warrior of Diamond, Vajrasattva." It seems that Master Asanga is already anticipating the crucial subject matter of the *Latter Part*: the seven diamond-like visions.

2) Name the seven diamond-like visions which form the basis for the structure of the Latter Part. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks add these.)

(a)	The Buddha	প্ৰ:ক্ৰীপ	बुद्ध
		sangye	Buddha
(b)	The Dharma	žai	धर्म
		chu	dharma
(c)	The Sangha	र्द्धग्रा	गण
		tsok	gan.a
(d)	The element	বিষ্ণা	धातु
		kham	dha-tu

(e)	Enlightenment	चिर:क्वा	बोधि
		jangchub	bodhi
(f)	The qualities	थेंब फ़ब्	गुण
		yunten	gun.a
(g)	Enlightened activity	মুধ্র-মেশা	बोद्धकर्म
		trinle	bauddha karma

<sup>\*3)</sup> Each of the Three Jewel has two forms: deceptive and ultimate. Give a brief description of the two forms for each of the Jewels:

#### (a) Buddha Jewel

- (1) deceptive form: the body of form (Rupakaya)
- (2) ultimate form: the truth body (Dharmakaya), whose nature is "elimination" (the end of negative qualities, and also the absence of self-existence) along with perfect wisdom

#### (b) Dharma Jewel

- (1) deceptive form: the collection of holy teachings
- ultimate form: the truth of cessation and the truth of the path in the mind of a person who belongs to the greater way

#### (c) Sangha Jewel:

- (1) deceptive form: the group of beings who have seen emptiness directly (aryas) and who belong to the greater way
- ultimate form: the knowledge and liberation in the mind of someone who has seen emptiness directly and who belongs to the greater way
- 4) Explain the logic behind the order of the seven diamond-like visions (as opposed to the logic behind the number of these visions).

Here, (1) the first vision—the Buddha—is the Buddha that we want to become ourselves, in the future. Remember that, in the definition of the wish for enlightenment, or bodhichitta, our motivation has two parts: we want to become a Buddha, and we want to do so for all other living beings. The only way we can really help other living beings is

to teach them (2) the Dharma in the ultimately perfect way that a Buddha does. When we do so, we help other beings attain the wish for enlightenment, and see emptiness directly, thus becoming (3) the true Sangha.

In order to do this though we must first become (4) enlightened, which involves both perceiving and developing different parts of our own (5) Buddha nature. When we do become enlightened, we gain all the (6) perfect qualities of an Enlightened Being. This then makes us capable of performing (7) enlightened activities to help others, the most important being that ability to teach the Dharma perfectly.

*Meditation assignment:* 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on the logic behind the order of the seven diamond-like visions.

*Debate assignment:* Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more friends.



## Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha

Homework and Quiz Master, Class Three: Becoming a Shelter for the World (Quiz questions are marked with an asterisk.)

- 1) Describe three qualities possessed by an ideal student for the *Latter Part of the Series*. Then describe one negative trait that they *don't* possess. And please add to the first two qualities the reason why a perfect student develops them.
  - (a) The ideal student for this book is someone who is of the greater-way type, and who possesses a sharp spiritual intellect. Their first quality is that they are capable of establishing that it is necessary to attain enlightenment. The reason they develop this quality is that they immerse themselves in the methods for attaining great compassion and personal responsibility for others' enlightenment.
  - (b) Their second quality is that they are capable of establishing that it is possible to attain enlightenment. The reason they develop this quality is that they grasp emptiness and associated ideas.
  - (c) Their third quality is that they are able to make the decision that they must themselves then go about attaining enlightenment, for the sake of every living being.
  - (d) The quality that they don't possess is the one that people who have dull spiritual intellects possess: the resolution to achieve something like enlightenment without first seeing any logical reason for doing so.
- 2) The actual name in both Sanskrit and Tibetan for the "Jewel" in the "Three Jewels" is a combination of the words "rare" and "supreme." The Latter Part of the Series gives six reasons behind this combination. List any three of these reasons here. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks include these.)
  - (a) The Jewels are like precious stones that "occur only rarely" in the world: those who have not collected sufficient good karma cannot meet them, even in the time of many eons.

# वजुर पर र्गोद्रा दुर्लभोत्पाद jungwa kun durlabhotpa-da

(b) The Jewels are like wish-giving gems that have been cleaned of every imperfection: they are "free of impurity" because they are absolutely free of the "impurities" of being unable to protect us or being something that would deceive us.

(c) The Jewels are like wishing jewels which are "possessed of great power": which have the ability to give us food, clothing, and other enjoyments. This is because the Jewels possess qualities of inconceivable power, such as the six kinds of clairvoyance.

# মন্থ্র। प्रभावत् tunden prabha-vat}}

[The other three are:

The Jewels are like wish-giving jewels that are "jewel ornaments for the world" because they give their owners all the things they could wish for in the world. This is because the Jewels inspire people to strive for both the higher rebirths and the ultimate good of nirvana and Buddhahood.



The Jewels are wish-giving gems that are "infinitely supreme" when compared to fake gems. This is because the Jewels are completely beyond all worldly kinds of refuge.

सर्केषा है दा	अग्रत
choknyi	agrata

The Jewels are like a wishing jewel whose function is "never wavering"; that is, it performs its work whether you praise it or insult it. Just so, the Jewels never refuse to give refuge to anyone, regardless of how they are treated by them; and since they are typified by the direct perception of ultimate truth, which never changes.



3) Briefly explain the difference between result refuge and cause refuge, then describe the original passage from a sutra by Lord Buddha himself from which this concept is drawn.

Result refuge means that one goes for refuge to the Three Jewels that one will later become. Cause refuge means that one goes for refuge to the Three Jewels that already exist in other people. The idea is based on the *Sutra Requested by the Householder Ugra*, in which Lord Buddha says that bodhisattva householders go for refuge for example in the Buddha Jewel first by thinking "I will attain the body of a Buddha, adorned with the marks of an enlightened being," and then by making great efforts in collecting the mass of good needs necessary to make this happen.

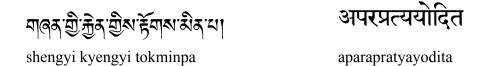
- \*4) In the *Commentary on the Latter Part*, the Buddha Jewel is said to possess six great qualities. Three of these relate to achieving ones own ultimate goals, and three relate to achieving the ultimate goals of others. Name and describe the three that relate to ones own goals. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks name in these languages, and describe in English.)
  - (a) All the qualities of the Buddha Jewel can be divided into two: those that relate to achieving ones own goals, and those that relate to achieving the goals of others. The former involve the body of truth (dharmakaya), and the latter involve the body of form (rupakaya). The body of truth itself can be further divided into the "realm of the real" and the "knowing." The "realm of the real" further includes two parts, the first of which is natural purity, or ultimate reality. As such it is an *unproduced thing*.

वर्षासम्भा असंस्कृत duma je asam.skr.ta

(b) The second part of the "realm of the real" is achieved purity, also known as the "spontaneous," wherein all conscious effort is ended in the service of others.

পূর স্থীম স্বান	अनाभोग
hlun gyi drup	ana-bhoga

(c) The wisdom which perceives how things are, here called "knowing," *does not realize things due to another*—that is, through discursive rather than direct types of perception.



- \*5) Now do the same for the three qualities that relate to others' goals. (T,S)
- (a) One first needs the *knowledge* which perceives the total quantity of things; that is, one is not moved to come to the aid of others unless you are aware of their suffering.

মষ্ট্রির'মা	ज्ञान
khyenpa	jn~a-na

(b) One then needs ultimate *love;* that is, one can be aware that others are suffering but without love would not be concerned by that suffering.

न्हें न	कारुण्य
tsewa	ka-run.ya

(c) One needs power to do something; without this, you cannot help others, even though you may be aware of their suffering and love them and hope to help them.

*Meditation assignment:* 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on the six qualities you need to help yourself and others.

*Debate assignment:* Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more friends.

#### The Asian Classics Institute



### Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha

Homework and Quiz Master, Class Four: The Sun of the Holy Dharma (Quiz questions are marked with an asterisk.)

- \*1) In a very famous verse from the fourth chapter of the Commentary on the Latter Part, Lord Maitreya uses the metaphor of a disease to explain the four arya truths. Explain the four parts of the metaphor. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks use these languages for the metaphor.)
  - 2) "We must realize that we are sick" describes the truth of suffering.

बराबे:विश्वा र्म्या पर्मेया पर्मे रा dukngel denpa neni sheja

व्याधिर्ज्ञेय दुःख vya-dhirjn~eya duh.kha

(b) "We must get rid of the cause of the sickness" describes the truth of the cause of suffering.

बर्जेकु बे स्टा nekyi gyuni pangja kunjung denpa

vya-dhihetu praheya

© "We must must attain health" describes the truth of cessation.

यदे यात्र शर्ते वियाद्या दर्गीया यदेता dene ni tobja gokden

स्वास्थ्य प्राप्य

sva-sthya pra-pya

(d) "We must take the medicine" describes the truth of the path.

ञ्चन'ने'नम्नेन'नु। यम'ननेन'

minni tenja lamden

भेषज सेव्य bhes.aja sevya

2) Back to the first chapter: having discussed the Buddha Jewel, Arya Asanga then goes on to describe the Dharma Jewel. Gyaltsab Je compares the relationship between these two to a yawn. Explain!

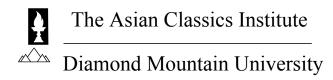
We might normally think of the relationship between the Buddha Jewel and the Dharma Jewel as a temporal one: you get enlightened, you turn the wheel of the Dharma, and this causes the truths of cessation and path to occur within your students. Gyaltsab Je says you can think of the relationship this way, but you can also describe it as something that occurs simultaneously: you attain the Buddha Jewel yourself, and because of that you attain the ultimate form of the Dharma Jewel (the very highest forms of cessation and path), all at the same moment. It's as if someone said to you, "Opening her mouth, she sleeps," which you could interpret as "She yawned and went to bed" when the person really meant "She sleeps with her mouth open."

- 3) Name the two parts of the "real" Dharma Jewel, and give examples of each.
  - (a) The truth of cessation: The fact, for example, that a person who has seen emptiness directly has stopped, forever, any intellectual belief that things could exist independent of their projections.
  - (b) The truth of the path: The direct perception of emptiness.
- 4) The truth of cessation itself includes two parts. Name them.
  - (a) The part which is "natural purity."
  - (b) The part which is "achieved purity." This is then similar to the two parts of the essence body of a Buddha.

- 5) Give three qualities of the natural purity of the truth of cessation.
  - (a) It cannot be perceived by a mind which still has "dualism."
  - (b) It cannot be perceived through "another."
  - (c) It is perceived only by a mind free of "dualism."
- \*6) Lord Maitreya say that the purity which is achieved depends on the "light of wisdom": the knowledge of an arya both during and just after the direct perception of emptiness. He bows down to this "sun," because it destroys the darkness of ignorance and thus frees us from pain. Describe the six steps by which this freedom, according to Lord Maitreya, takes place.
  - (a) We stop thinking of things the wrong way: we stop believing that things are anything other than scenes projected onto an empty screen by the karmic seeds of how we have behaved towards others in the past.
  - (b) This stops us from either liking or disliking things in the wrong way.
  - (c) This stops us hurting others to get what we want or avoid what we don't want.
  - (d) Eventually we can stop our deep tendency to see things the wrong way.
  - (e) This gradually destroys our old seeds for seeing things the wrong way, and prevents us from collecting new seeds for this mistake.
  - (f) This frees us from perpetuating the cycle of suffering. As you may have noticed by now, this is the source for the famous "Six Steps of Maitreya," for how we get caught in the cycle of pain.

*Meditation assignment:* 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation—think of the one thing or person which gives you the most trouble in your life, and how you might apply the six steps just mentioned in stopping this problem.

*Debate assignment:* Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more friends.



In-Depth Course 1
Teachings of the Future Buddha

Homework and Quiz Master, Class Five: Death and Realized Beings

\*1) Quote the famous verse from the *Commentary on the Latter Part* which describes how realized beings (aryas, or those who have seen emptiness directly) relate to death. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks, entire verse as well.)

Realized beings have eliminated death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions--They have none, and so have none.

## वसवासायसायकैन्द्रान्दान्ता

pakpay chidang nawa dang
|ন্যান্ত্র্য

dela mechir deme

# मृत्युव्याधिजरादुःखमूलम् आर्येर् अपोद्धृतम्। mr.tyu vya-dhi jara duhkha mu-lam a-ryair apodr.tam कर्मक्रेशवसाज् जातिस् तद् अभावान् न तेषु तत्। karma klesha vasa-j ja-tis tad abha-va-n na tes.u tat

2) The textbooks of Sera Mey Monastery written by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-

1568) say that someone can be the truth of suffering, and yet not possess the gross form of the "demon of the heaps." Name the type of person they refer to. (T)

An example of someone who is the truth of suffering but does not possess the gross form of the "demon of the heaps" would a person who has seen emptiness directly, and thus "entered the stream," and who has seven more births to go before reaching enlightenment. These are called "seven-timers."

# श्रीन्यायेषायतुष्रायाया

sipa lendun pawa

### सभ कृद् भव

sapta kr.d bhava

3) Choney Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748), the Sera Mey master who wrote our commentary to the *Diamond Cutter Sutra*, says that someone can possess "an impurity involved with mental afflictions" but not possess the truth of suffering. Name the type of person he refers to.

Choney Lama uses the verse above; he is speaking of a person who is a bodhisattva and who has also seen emptiness directly. They still possess the tendency to grasp to a real "self" of a person.

\*4) In his description of how to attain the rainbow body, especially at death, Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419) explains that something else must come before. Name this thing.

Je Tsongkapa also uses the verse above, as he demonstrates how the direct perception of emptiness must precede attaining the rainbow body.

5) In one of his commentaries on the tantra called the "Secret Collection" (Guhya Samaja), Je Tsongkapa states that there is something even more powerful than a bodhisattva who has seen emptiness directly. What does he mention?

Je Tsongkapa again uses the verse above, and then mentions a bodhisattva arya who is practicing the secret way.

6) Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye, in a debate about how bodhisattvas who have seen emptiness directly still take rebirth, suggests that there would be reasons why--according to the opponent at least--they might do so through mental afflictions. Describe these two.

The Master sarcastically suggests: either (1) bodhisattva aryas are unable to take rebirth

wherever they want, through the power of their compassion and prayers, and so mental afflictions have to be the cause why they take rebirth; or (2) even though it may not be accepted as a mental affliction, the fear of losing themselves, at the time of death, forces them into a rebirth. He then uses the same quotation above in helping to demonstrate that, if either were the case, then bodhisattva aryas would be incapable of helping themselves, much less others.

\*7) Can a person be free of ever again taking birth through the power of karma and mental afflictions, and yet still possess a mental affliction?

Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye again uses the quotation above in showing that bodhisattva aryas, even though they no longer take birth through the power of karma and mental afflictions, still possess the mental affliction which "chains them to the cycle of pain." This he identifies as the "seeds for ignorance."

8) How does the author of the Sera Je textbook series, Sera Jetsun Chukyi Gyeltsen (1469-1546), address the problem that—if they posess seeds for ignorance—bodhisattva aryas would possess mental-affliction obstacles?

He uses the quotation above and describes these seeds as obstacles to omniscience, and not mental-affliction obstacles.

9) How, in the teachings on the Steps of the Path (Lam Rim), is the famous quotation above used?

In a commentary to the lam-rim text called the *Easy Path* (which itself was written by the First Panchen Lama, Panchen Lobsang Chukyi Gyeltsen, 1567-1662) the quotation is used to urge us to enter the higher way (the mahayana) from the very beginning, since people who have seen emptiness directly thereby avoid most of the normal problems that people encounter as they try to take care of their own needs.

*Meditation assignment:* 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on the various debates covered in the class and reading.

*Debate assignment:* Some time before the next class, discuss this class with one or more friends.



#### The Asian Classics Institute



# Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Homework and Ouiz Master, Class Six: Nine Images for the Concealed Buddha

- 1) In traditional explanations of Buddha-nature, or the fact that we are devoid of any nature of our own, there are a group of famous verses which are often quoted from *The* Commentary on the Latter Part. These verses present nine images to describe how our true nature is concealed. State each one of the images and then explain it, remembering to give the specific obstacle which prevents it from being revealed to us. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks give the name of the image in these languages.)
- 1) [The image of a Buddha statue within an ugly lotus. An ugly and foul-smelling lotus represents the dormant form of the first of the three poisons: liking things in an ignorant way. This desire is similar to a lotus because, although it makes you happy at first, later it always makes you unhappy. It conceals within it the splendor of a Buddha's form, with all the marks of enlightenment. The Enlightened Ones can look even at the beings in the lowest hell and see their ultimate nature, which is their Buddha-seed.

बुद्धः कुपद्मे タイタ、単タ、たん、てみ、ひし

sanggye pengen la buddah. kupadme

2) [The image of a bee with honey. The bee represents the dormant form of the second poison: disliking things in an ignorant way. This is because one would not want to be or remain in contact with a bee. A skillful beekeeper can successfully separate the bees from the honey, which represents our true nature: just as sweet, all one flavor, within each and every living being. A skillful yogi can separate off the negative emotions which keep us from getting to the honey.

मधु मक्षिकासु श्रूट्यायाश्रूट्री

drangma la drantsi madhu maks.ika-su

3) [The image of the essence laying within the husk of piece of grain. The husk of a

piece of grain represents the dormant form of the third poison, ignorance itself. The inner essence is our Buddha nature, which like a piece of grain still locked in its husk cannot be enjoyed or experienced. And so the Buddhas help us remove the husk—the impurity of the mental afflictions—by teaching us. But as Gyaltsab Je points out, in the end the one who must actually strip the husk off is none other than ourselves.

क्षुन व क्षेप्र साराणि

bunla nyingpo tus.esu sa-ra-n.i

4) [The image of a gold coin dropped in a cesspool. The cesspool represents the three poisons in their strong, manifest form; they are lumped together in this form because each of them when manifest inspires us to do the same bad deeds. If a person were hurrying down the road and accidentally dropped a gold coin in a cesspool, the gold's essence would never in hundreds of years be polluted, nor would the gold melt away. Someone with supernormal vision could come and tell us where it was, and we could fish it out, clean it, and get rich. We can do the same with the Buddha within us, by relying on the teachings of Lord Buddha.

भैंगार्डट द्वट व ग्रारीट। अशुची सुवर्ण

mitsang nangna ser as'ucau suvarn.a

5) [The image of a treasure buried under the floor of a poor man's hut. The earth here represents the seeds of ignorance, and the levels at which it is found. A poor man may have an inexhaustible treasure chest buried under the floor of his house. He doesn't have any idea that it's there; and neither does the chest announce itself, saying "I'm under here." Just so, all living beings have possessed, for time with no beginning, a Buddhanature consisting of the two kinds of a lack of self-existence. This nature does not announce itself, and because people don't perceive it, they suffer the poverty of all forms of pain. And so the Buddhas come into the world to inform them of their true wealth.

শ্বাদ্যমান

sa la ter nidhih. ks.itau

6) [The image of the sprout for a tree being contained within a small fruit which acts as the seed for the tree. Here this small piece of fruit is like the negativities within us which we eliminate at the path of seeing. As this path grows within us, these negativities are destroyed, just as a small piece of fruit which acts as a seed for another sprout disappears as the sprout comes forth. In this image, sunlight and rain and fertilizer fall upon a small

fruit, inspiring the seed within it to shoot forth a sprout. Just so, the Buddha-seed within us all—covered by the flesh of the fruit of negative emotions—is made to grow as we go through the cultivation of learning, thinking, and meditating.

अल्पफले ऽण्कुरादि

nyuksok drechung

alpaphale 'n.kura-di

7) [The image of a statue of the Victor within a ragged cloth. The statue is made of a precious substance like gold or jewel, and it lies at the side of a busy road wrapped in a filthy, smelly cloth. A deity appears and tells the people travelling by that within the cloth lies the holy being. The cloth represents mental afflictions eliminated by the path of habituation, because they are destroyed then like a cloth ripped to pieces, with nothing substantial remaining. The statue inside is our Buddha-nature, which holy beings perceive exists within all creatures travelling on the road: even animals and so forth.

# म्बार्थकायरायाम्य

प्रक्लिन्नवस्त्रेषु जिनात्म

guhrul nangna gyelku

praklinnavastres.u jina-tma

8) [The image of a world emperor in the womb of an ugly and impoverished woman. She sits alone and unprotected in her poor home, not knowing that she is pregnant with a baby who is to become the King of the World. The beings of the three realms are the same, suffering in a place with no protection and unaware that the highest protector lies within them—a protector which will slowly but surely be produced from themselves, as the Buddhas teach them and reveal what they have inside. Here the ugly and impoverished woman, along with her foul clothes and poor house, represent the obstacles which exist at the "impure" bodhisattva levels: the first seven, which are all tied up with seeing things as self-existent and prevent you from knowing yourself.

# तुन् योन प्रवासिक स्थानिक

जघन्यनारीजठरे नृपत्व

bume ngenmay tona midak

jaghanyana-ri-jath.are nr.patva

9) [The image of a statue made of pure gold, but covered with mud or clay. The statue of gold here specifically refers to the true nature of our minds. The obstacles represented by the mud are those of the last three bodhisattva levels, known as the "pure" levels, since one is already free from the perception of things as self-existent and its seeds. That is, one still possesses obstacles but they are very subtle, like a very fine smearing of mud. The wise are aware of what's inside and work to clear away the covering.

# শ'ম'ইর'ক্টর'বারুবাশা

# मृत्सु रत्नविम्ब

sala rinchen suk

mr.tsu ratnabimba

*Homework assignment:* 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation going through the nine images and thinking about all the details of what they mean. Try to visualize each image in your own room, in your own being.



#### The Asian Classics Institute



## Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1
Teachings of the Future Buddha:
The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Homework and Quiz Master, Class Seven: Buddha-Nature is Emptiness

1) There are a variety of names in Sanskrit and Tibetan for "Buddha-nature." Give any three of them, with their English translation. (Sanskrit and Tibetan tracks write in those languages.)

[Any three of the following can be used:

(a) "Essence of the Ones Gone Thus"

ने प्रविद्यानियाश प्रवे हो स्थागत	। गर्भ
-----------------------------------	--------

deshin shekpay nyingpo tatha-gata garbha

(b) "Essence of the Ones Gone to Bliss"

यदे.यर.योज्यांश.तंत्रःश्चेट.त्र्	सुगत गर्भ
----------------------------------	-----------

dewar shekpay nyingpo sugata garbha

(c) "Heart of the Ones Gone Thus"

ने प्रवित प्रापियाश प्रवित् क्षेट र्से तथागत हृद्य

deshin shekpay nyingpo tatha-gata hr.daya

(d) "Family seed"

रेग्राह्य गोत्र

rik gotra

(e) "Buddha-part"

দ্রমশ্য धातु

kham dha-tu

(f) "Buddha-genus"

**र्या अन्य क्रिक्स अन्य क्रिक्स विका** 

sanggye kyi rik buddhavam.s.a

- \*2) Give the words with which Lord Buddha himself, 2500 years ago, spoke of emptiness as He began the discussion of Buddha-nature in the *Middle-Length Sutra on the Perfection of Wisdom*. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
- ["O Subhuti, there is no track left in the sky when a bird passes by; it is simply invisible."

rabjor namkha lajay jeme chingmi mikso

3) Quote two of the lines from *The Ornament of Realizations* in which Lord Maitreya, 16 centuries ago, described Buddha-nature. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

[The expression "family seed" refers to the foundation For entering the six different realizations...

क्रियायायायायी है के या नुया

tokpa yini chudruk

विद्वापित्र हेन या रेगाय लेया हा

jukpay tenla rigshe ja

4) In one of the most famed commentaries on Maitreya's teachings, the Indian master Haribhadra (from the 9<sup>th</sup> Century) gave a concise definition of Buddha-nature. Quote it (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

["What we call 'Buddha-nature' refers only to the true nature of things: to the ether of things."

chukyi yingkyi ngowo nyi kona la rikshe tento

\*5) Give the technical definition of "Buddha-nature." (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

["Anything which can become a Buddha."

## タイダ.望か.が.ど<u>節</u>エ.子と.

sanggye su gyur rung

- 6) Give the three types of Buddha-nature; and an example for each. (Tibetan track give the types in Tibetan. Sanskrit track add Sanskrit for the first type.)
- (a) [Innate Buddha-nature. Examples would be the emptiness of ones mind, or the emptiness of the path of seeing and similar realizations.

# रदः प्रविदः पाद्रशः देगारा। प्रकृतिस्थ गोत्र

rangshin nerik

prakr.tistha gotra

(b) Buddha-nature for development. The wisdom of a bodhisattva perceiving emptiness on the path of seeing.



gyengyur gyi rik

(c) Other types of Buddha-nature. The truth of cessation (which belongs to deceptive reality) in the mind of a bodhisattva on the path of seeing.

## ने यस माल्य परे मेगा

dele shenpay rik

- \*7) Now give the definitions of the first two types of Buddha-nature from the last question.
- (a) [Innate Buddha-nature is defined as "Anything which is first of all the realm of things (emptiness), and secondly can become the essence body."
- (b) Buddha-nature for development is defined as "Anything which can become one of the caused bodies at the level of a Buddha."]
- \*8) Lama Umapa is the famous teacher of Je Tsongkapa who acted as an intermediary between his student and Gentle Voice (Manjushri). In his collection of texts on this Angel, Lama Umapa describes how the five different wisdoms of an Enlightened Being mark the final transformation of the five different heaps and the purification of five sets of negative emotions. List these three items for each of the five types of wisdom.
- (a) [Mirror-like wisdom; heap of consciousness; purification of anger
- (b) Equal wisdom; heap of feeling; purification of pride and cheapness
- (c) Analytical wisdom; heap of discrimination; purification of ignorant liking
- (d) Accomplishing wisdom; heap of other factors; purification of jealousy
- (e) Wisdom of the dharma-realm; heap of form; purification of ignorance

Homework and meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on parts of yourself that will turn into the Buddha you are to become (if you're not already!).



#### The Asian Classics Institute



# Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Homework and Quiz Master, Class Eight: Other Schools on Buddha Nature

1) Describe how the Detailists—the Abhidharma School—explain Buddha-nature, and why. (Sanskrit and Tibetan tracks give the description in these languages.)

The members of this school describe Buddha-nature in terms of "Buddha-nature for a realized being" (arya), saying it consists of keeping to the principle of not wanting much, and being satisfied with what you have. This is because without this attitude as a foundation or seed, one has no hope of becoming a realized being or reaching nirvana.

# वर्रेन्क्र केंग्र वेश्व वस्याश्य परि देगशा

अल्पेभ संतोष आर्य वंष

duchung chokshe pakpay rik

alpeccha sam.tos.a a-rya vam.s.a

\*2) State how the Mind-Only School describes Buddha-nature, and then how they distinguish between the two classical types of Buddha-nature. (S, T for description of Buddha-nature.)

[The Mind-Only School describes Buddha-nature as "An undefiled seed in the mind, possessed by a suffering living being." This is called "developable" Buddha-nature whenever it has been developed through learning and so on; and "innate" or "natural" whenever it has not been so developed.

# রন্য মিদ ক্রিম কাস্ট্র কার্ম বর্

अनास्रव चित्तबीज

sukme semkyi sabun

ana-srava cittabi-ja

- 3) List the two principal works that we will use for our presentation of the idea of Buddha-nature according to the Tibetan school of "other-emptiness" (shentong); also name the two authors, and their dates. (Tibetan track in Tibean.)
- (a) The Deep Inner State by the His Holiness the Third Karmapa, Rangjung Dorje (1284-1339) (We will also be using the commentary to this by Jamgon Kongtrul, next.)

#### वयः संस्कृतः देवा ٵٙۼۥٚڂڎٷڎڿٛڐٳ

karma rangjung dorje sabmo nangdun

(b) The Moon of Diamond: a Teaching on Other-Emptiness, by Kongtrul Yonten Gyatso (also known as Garwang Lodru Taye), (1813-1899)

यालव र्स्ट्रेट स्वाचिन र्हे हिवे ज्ञाचा ग्रेट खुवा प्यंत्र हत क्रांकि

kongtrul yunten gyatso

shentong tatri dorjey dawa

নাম্বেদ্রে র্মিশ্রমারর অকা

garwang lodru taye

- 4) According to Jamgon Kongtrul, there are three great Tibetan fathers of the otheremptiness traditions. Name them and give their dates.
- (a) {His Holiness the Third Karmapa, Rangjung Dorje (1284-1339);
- (b) the omniscient Dolpowa Sherab Gyeltsen (1292-1361), also known as Jonangpa Sherab Gyeltsen and originally a Sakya scholar; and
- (c) the Nyingma master Longchen Rabjampa (1308-1363), also known as "the omniscient Drime User."]
- 5) The Tibetan school of "other-emptiness" is tied to the Jonangpa tradition. Explain the name "Jonangpa" and relate a little about the history of this lineage.

[The word "Jonangpa" refers to Jomo Nang, an area near the town of Shigatse, south of Lhasa. It is said in some sources that the idea of "other-emptiness" began with a Lama named Yumo Mikyu Dorje, who lived in the 11<sup>th</sup> century. He wrote texts on the idea. and a monastery in this area named Jonang Gonpa ("Monastery of Jonang") was later founded by a member of his lineage named Kunpang Tukje Tsundru (1243-1313). Because he contributed greatly to the spread of this school, Dolpowa Sherab Gyeltsen (1292-1361) earned the named of "the Jonangpa," and is referred to as such for example in the works of Je Tsongkapa. (He was a "grand-disciple" of Master Kunpang.) The school later went into decline, but was revived by Jetsun Taranatha (b.1575), who wrote a famous history of Buddhism and was especially active in Mongolia. The famed Gelukpa trulkus of the Jetsun Dampa lineage, considered a sort of "Dalai Lama" of Mongolia, are considered to be his reincarnation.]

\*6) Give an explanation of what the "other" (shen) in the expression "other-emptiness" (shentong) means.

[There are three great characteristics of the ancient Indian school of the Mind-Only: totality, dependent things, and constructs. The Jonangpa School of Tibet holds that "totality" refers to a "wisdom which perceives that subjects and objects are not two separate things." This wisdom is "empty (tong) or devoid of other (shen) things included in deceptive reality, such as dependent things and constructs." As such it is "otherempty." (Quoted from *The Great Dictionary*.)]

\*7) How does the idea of "other-emptiness" (*shentong*) relate to the Buddha-nature which is the subject of our class?

[As noted above, "other-emptiness" refers to the wisdom or state of mind or wisdom which perceives that subjects and objects are not separate. His Holiness Karma Rangjung Dorje, according to Jamgon Kongtrul, describes Buddha-nature as "that primordial mind, the state of indivisible ether and wisdom, which is like a reflection of the moon in water; beyond all true or false; that which cannot ever be identified; and beyond all names." The school thus seems to mix together as Buddha-nature the wisdom which perceives emptiness and the emptiness or "clear light" which it perceives. They are attacked on this point by our own school, which does not accept an unchanging functional thing.]

8) How does Jonangpa himself (Master Sherab Gyeltsen) describe the two kinds of Buddha-nature?

[He says that the natural or innate Buddha-nature is an actual Buddha, complete with the 32 qualites of enlightenment, which has existed for all time as a component part of every suffering living being. "Developable" Buddha-nature then consists of new occasions of Buddha-nature which are created as one engages in actions such as learning. We thus see the influence of the Mind-Only School in his thinking.]

\*9) The members of the Jonangpa School differentiate between "great" followers of the Middle Way (Madhyamika) and "regular" followers of the Middle Way, grouping these last together with followers of the three lower schools of classical Indian Buddhism: the Detailists (Abhidharma schools); Sutrists (logic schools); and Yogists (Mind-Only School). Explain how they draw the distinction between their own "great" version of the Middle Way, and the "regular" Middle Way and other groups.

[They say that "regular" followers of the Middle Way speak about how all existing objects are empty of any essence of their own. Those of the lower schools talk about the lack of a self to the person, and the lack of truth to objects of perception; whereas the Yogists speak of wisdom devoid of duality. But because all these views are still mistaken, they are "far from enlightenment." The only people who can really have any experience of the wisdom free of duality are those who are perceiving it directly, or those who are training their minds through meditation on nothing at all, or a space-like vision.

The idea that analysis of or contemplation on emptiness could be useful is a "delusion."]

- 10) Give four criticisms of the "other-emptiness" and Jonangpa ideas of Buddha-nature mentioned by Gyaltsab Je in his explanation of *The Commentary on the Latter Part (Uttara Tantra)*.
- (a) [Ultimate reality is an unchanging thing. The wisdom which perceives that there is no difference between subject and object is a working thing. It is a contradiction to say that Buddha-nature is somehow a mix of both things at the same time.
- (b) A Buddha's essence body is described as possessing two kinds of purity: natural purity or emptiness, and an achieved purity of negativities. It is contradictory to say that the mind from beginningless time has been pure in both ways, since then there would be nothing left to achieve, and we would already be Buddhas.
- (c) You define "other-emptiness" (*shentong*) as something "devoid of deceptive objects," and equate this to ultimate reality and Buddha-nature. When you say "devoid of deceptive objects," do you mean "never *involved* with deceptive objects" or "never *being* deceptive objects"? The former can't be the case, since you say ultimate reality—Buddha-nature—spreads to all beings. And the latter can't be the case, since you don't need to be a special disciple or "great" follower of the Middle Way to see that ultimate reality is not deceptive reality.
- (d) You say that thinking and analysis are of no benefit in reaching the wisdom which is free of all duality; that this can only be reached in "thoughtless" meditation. Why then do you undertake to explain for example "other-emptiness" to people?]
- 11) A beautiful concept in the structure of Jamgon Kongtrul's *Diamond Moon* is that this Lama first discusses the *idea* of Buddha-nature, and after that presents a series of actual *practices* which one can follow to realize this nature. Summarize his final advice for practice.

[He says: "Feel deep love and belief that the Lama who imparts these essential instructions to you is the Dharmakaya itself. Reflect to yourself that, since all living beings possess the Buddha-nature, then—whether you are able at this point to recognize it or not—they all ultimately combine within themselves already the 64 high qualities of an enlightened being. Practice thus the universe of purity.]

12) On the very first page of his *Diamond Moon*, Jamgon Kongtrul gives us a clue as to why a high Lama might take an untenable position concerning emptiness and Buddhanature. What does He say?

[He says: "It's not that we make this distinction between literal and figurative teachings

because there is any chance that some part of Lord Buddha's teachings could be intentional lies—something false. Rather, these teachings were all given relative to certain differences within people's minds: whether they were capable of entering into those inconceivable depths or not. As such, Lord Buddha began the first of the three steps in the Turning of the Wheel in the way that a mother would begin her baby with mush, before going on to solid food."]

*Meditation assignment:* 15 minutes a day, analytical meditation considering the difference between seeing Buddha-nature as something positive—a seed in the mind; and something negative—the lack of a self-existent object.



#### The Asian Classics Institute



# Diamond Mountain University

In-Depth Course 1 Teachings of the Future Buddha: The Uttara Tantra of Maitreya

Homework and Quiz Master, Class Nine: In the End, All Paths Are One

- 1) Name the three ways or vehicles that relate to the discussion in *The Latter Part* about there being, in the end, one way. Also explain the names of these three ways. (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks add those languages.)
- (a) [The way of the listeners (also known as "those who listen and proclaim the teachings"), so called because the followers of this way listen to the teachings of the greater way, and even share them with others, but are not inclined to practice them.

প্রবার্ত্রকার্য্যা প্রবাদ্যা

श्रावकयान

nyentu kyi tekpa

s'ra-vakaya-na

"those who listen and proclaim":



tudruk

(b) The way of the self-made buddhas. They are given the name because, after millions of lifetimes of study with Masters, they are able to gain realizations working on their own. One older sutra reference seems to imply that they are called self-made (Skt: pratyeka) because they utilize direct perceptions (pratyaksha) of emptiness to achieve their goals.

メセ・ダイダ・単刻

प्रत्येक बुद्ध यान

ranggyal pratyeka buddha ya-na rang sanggye

(c) The greater way. The way of the bodhisattvas, whose scope covers every living being.

## वेगायान महायान

tekpa chenpo maha-ya-na

2) Explain the difference in motivation, and thus the goals, of followers of the three ways.

[Followers of the first two ways—those of the listeners and the self-made buddhas—correspond in motivation to practitioners of medium scope in the teachings on the steps of the path (lam-rim). That is, they seek to eliminate their mental afflictions, become enemy destroyers (arhats), and thus gain their own nirvana and freedom from suffering life altogether. Those of the greater way seek to become a fully enlightened Buddha, in order to save all beings from all forms of pain.]

3) Explain the difference in core teachings used by followers of the three ways.

[Followers of the listener way utilize primarily the teachings on the four arya truths. Those of the way of the self-made buddhas utilize the teaching on the twelve links of dependent origination. Those of the greater way utilize teachings of the greater way, such as the perfection of wisdom sutras and, especially in certain schools, the sutras relating to the third turning of the wheel.]

- \*4) Explain the difference, especially from the point of view of the Mind-Only and Independent Middle-Way Schools, between the kind of emptiness perceived by followers of each of the three ways. (Sanskrit and Tibetan tracks give the general names for the two and three types of emptiness, respectively; Tibetan track also add brief description of each of the three.)
- (a) Those of the listener way perceive the subtle lack of self-existence to a person. This is described as the lack of a person who is self-standing and substantial, in the sense of being an independent controller of their own mind and body.

#### 

gangsak gi dakme tramo pudgalanaira-tmya

# योर.चयो.प्रट.में.वीय.त.र्ह्य.लूरे.ग्रीय.र्ह्नेर.यो

gangsak rangkya tuppa dzeyu kyi tongwa

(b) Those of the way of the self-made buddhas perceive the gross lack of self-existence to phenomena. This is described as the lack of visible form and a perceiver of this form which come from a separate substance, or seed.

केंशगुःचन्याः सेन् स्यायाः या

धर्मनेरात्म्य

chukyi dakme rakpa

dharmanaira-tmya

## यांचीयां अन्तर यांचीयां अत्रहें देशी. क्षेत्र आहं अयां बिद शी अरहें दर्या

suk dang sukdzin gyi tsema dzeshin gyi tongwa

(c) Those of the greater way perceive the subtle lack of self-existence to phenomena. This is described by the lower middle-way school as the lack of any object that is not established merely by its appearing to an unimpaired state of mind, but which rather exists from its own side, through some unique way of being of its own.

# र्केशःग्रीःयन्याःसेनःसःसी

chukyi dakme tramo

# मुंगिर्देन्सेन्यः सूर्याये न्वराये नवराये साम्यायं साम्याये साम्या

lonu mela nangway wanggi shaktsam mayinpar yul ranggi tunmong mayinpay ইব্বের্মান্ত্র্যুর্মান্ত্ব্যুর্মান্ত্র্যুর্মান্ত্যুর্মান্ত্র্যুর্ম

duluk su druppay tongwa

\*5) Why do members of the Mind-Only School, especially those who "follow after scripture," believe that—in the end—there are three different ways?

[They quote various sutras that refer to these ways. One is *The Sutra on the Journey to Langka*, which lists the three ways, as well as two others. Another source is *The True Intent of the Sutras*, which says that those of the two lower ways could never develop the wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta), because they have too little compassion; are too afraid of the sufferings of the circle of suffering; and are by nature of a lower type. And finally they quote the *Mother Sutras*, which state that practitioners of this type cannot develop bodhichitta because "they have already cut off the stream of cyclic existence."]

\*6) What, according to Gyaltsab Je, is the real reason why those of the Mind-Only School might believe that, in the end, there are three ways?

[He says that they believe this ultimately because they follow *The True Intent of the Sutras*, and thus hold that dependent things and totality exist ultimately. This makes them then believe that suffering beings have three different types of truly-existing Buddha-natures; and three types of truly-existing wishes; and expect three types of truly-

existing goals. They thus hold that there are suffering beings who will not be able to achieve full enlightenment.]

7) There is a story for explaining why Lord Buddha would say that there are three vehicles, when in the end of ends there is only one. Relate the story.

[Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748) relates the ancient scriptural story of the ship captain of skillful means who sees that his passengers are exhausted and about to give up the journey, and so in order to encourage them he emanates a beautiful city on an isle, which enables everyone to carry on until they reach the jewel island. Just so, there are travels using lower paths who are exhausted by them—especially those of the Mind-Only School, and Lord Buddha leads them on by guiding them to a lower nirvana.]

\*8) The debate over how many ways in the end there are, like all of Lord Buddha's teachings, has application to our modern life. Describe this application, and state two considerations that we will want to keep in mind.

[The fact that Lord Buddha himself would undertake to define two entire systems of practice that are, in the end, only steps to a higher system is a clear message that we can and should utilize many different ways of presenting ourselves and the teachings in order to attract people to what will be of ultimate benefit. In order for this to be effective, we must first have a strong foundation and a clear perception of what *is* of ultimate benefit. And then we must be creative and dedicated in finding skillful means to reach others, remembering that we are actually saving people from both temporary and ultimate suffering.]

9) Suppose a practitioner is attracted to one of the two lower ways or vehicles, and uses it successfully to reach a lower nirvana. *The Latter Part* says that in the end all paths lead to one; how then does a person like this move up to the one path?

[Some people have asserted that someone who has already reached a lower nirvana enters the greater way at the seventh bodhisattva level, since they have by definition then already ended their mental afflictions. Choney Lama though says that they enter through the first of the five paths on the mahayana track—the path of accumulation—in order to collect massive amounts of good karma in this and the following paths, as a bodhisattva.

He says that if these lower enemy destroyers could go straight to the seventh bodhisattva level then everyone should go first to the lower nirvana, since in cases of great effort this can be accomplished in only three lifetimes, whereas it takes many millions of eons to work up through the bodhisattva levels to the seventh.]

10) The question of whether all paths lead into one brings up the larger issue of what the final end of the paths is like; which in turn raises the question of how it all began. Choney Lama quotes a metaphor to describe the end and beginning of the cycle of suffering—describe this metaphor.

[The verse quoted by Choney Lama states first that we cannot see the beginnings of physical seeds: we look at a pumpkin seed and know it came from the previous generation of seeds, but we cannot pinpoint a first seed. The cycle of suffering is the same. We can though see the end of a series of generations of seed, when we burn a seed, and know it will never create another generation. This too is the nature of our suffering, which logically will one day end because it is based on a relatively unstable and completely incorrect notion that things are coming from their own side.]

Debate assignment: Remember to review this class at least once before the next class, by sitting down with a friend over a cup of coffee or tea and simply discussing what was said.

Meditation assignment: Sit down for 15 minutes a day and do an analytical meditation about the worldview of karma, emptiness, and compassion, along with different skillful means in which you might present this worldview to more people, as Lord Buddha did with the presentation of "lower" ways.

# The Asian Classics Institute Diamond Mountain University

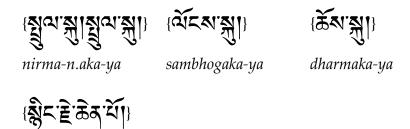
In-Depth Course 1	Name
Teachings of the Future Buddha	Place
	Date
	Track: F T S TS

Homework and Quiz Master, Class Ten: The Twelve Deeds of the Buddha (Quiz questions are marked with an asterisk.)

- \*1) Name the twelve deeds of the Buddha.
- [(1) Coming to our world from the Heaven of Bliss.
- (2) Entering the holy womb of his mother.
- (3) Taking birth from her womb.
- (4) Mastering the worldly arts.
- (5) Enjoying himself with the queens.
- (6) Leaving the worldly life.
- (7) Undertaking spiritual hardships.
- (8) Coming to the Seat of the Diamond, the "Heart of Enlightenment," and seating himself before the Bodhi Tree.
- (9) Defeating the demons.
- (10) Attaining total enlightenment.

- (11) Turning the wheels of the dharma.
- (12) Attaining final nirvana.]
- \*2) What moves, from where, but not from where, and for what reason, when the Buddha undertakes these twelve deeds? (Tibetan and Sanskrit tracks answer in those languages.)

[Due to the Buddha's great compassion, as he looks upon the suffering of the entire universe directly, the manation bod is sent from the enjoyment body to perform the twelve deeds—but without the Buddha actually *moving* from the dharma body.



maha-karun.a-]

3) Why does Lord Buddha come to our particular realm?

[Because our world (technically the southern continent of Jambudvipa, and more particularly the "central land" of India} is a "realm of deeds" where humans have a good intellect and are capable of renunciation.]

4) According to some ways of counting the twelve deeds, the Buddha undertakes another deed before the traditional first, which is then combined with the second. Name this new first deed.

[He takes birth as the divine youth named Shveta Ketu, in the Heaven of Bliss (that is, Tushita or Ganden paradise). There he teaches the Dharma and, when he perceives directly that it would be of benefit for all living beings, hands his crown over to the keeping of the coming Buddha, Maitreya, and heads for our realm.]

5) Give and explain the two well-known names that Lord Buddha received upon his

birth.

[The prince is named "Siddhartha" (which means "fulfilled [siddha] wishes or goals [artha] by his family, because, on the day that he is born, the people in his land are freed from all kinds of illness and trouble, and things that they had been wishing for come true. He is named "Shakyamuni" by the divine beings who come to pay him honor because all the rest of the Shakya people spend their time with meaningless talk and activities while this particular Shakya proves to be wisely quiet (muni).

\*6) Compare how those of the lower way, the greater way, and the secret way describe the level the Buddha was on as he went through the twelve deeds.

[According to "regular" position held by those of the lower way and some of the higher way, the Buddha was a bodhisattva (and more specifically either a bodhisattva on the path of accumulation or else a tenth-level bodhisattva) during the first nine deeds, and a Buddha during the last three deeds. According to the "special position—which is that of most texts of the greater way, the Buddha had long since become enlightened and only pretended to go through the twelve deeds for the benefit of disciples. According ot the secret way, Lord Buddha appears in his enlightened enjoyment body as Vajra Dhara and various other forms located in the Akanistha, the Heaven Below None—as well as in the special realms around our world—to give the secret teachings.]

7) There are two positions as to the deed the Buddha was performing when he attained "automatic ordination" as a full monk. State them.

[The Detailists say that this happened when Lord Buddha left the worldly life, which is the sixth of the twelve deeds Some masters say that, rather, it occurred when he reached the wisdom of no more learning (the tenth deed).]

8) Why, according to the Detailist School, was Lord Buddha forced to endure six years of spiritual hardship as the seventh deed?

[They say that it was a karmic result of his having spoken badly of the previous Buddha, Kashyapa. The higher schools say that statements in the original sutras to this effect must be taken figuratively.]

9) Name the four demons that are defeated as the ninth deed, and describe a position of

Je Tsongkapa on when they are actually stopped.

[The first is the demon of mental afflictions, which according to a presentation by Je Tsongkapa is defeated at the eighth bodhisattva level. Next is the demon of death; according to the same presentation, the need to die through karma and mental afflictions is absent from the first bodhisattva level, but since one still takes rebirth up until Buddhahood, then it can be said that this demon and the demon of the impure heaps are not defeated until then. The "demon of the divine youth" is a destructive spirit who obstructs the final defeat of the other three demons, and so it too is defeated only upon enlightenment.]

10) Are all the twelve deeds of Shakyamuni Buddha performed by Shakyamuni Buddha?

[Technically speaking, the first two deeds of coming to our world from the Heaven of Bliss and entering his holy mother's womb are deeds done by the person who was to become Shakyamuni Buddha.]

11) Speculate a bit on how each of the twelve deeds may represent a message from Lord Buddha to us on how to conduct each stage of our own life, over the course of our life.

Deciding to come to our world can represent the decision to get involved in helping others in an ultimate way, once we have seen their suffering. Entering the womb and taking a human birth can represent the decision to take on a form that other people can relate to, in order to teach them. Mastering the worldly arts could represent our worldly careers, which we must sooner or later leave behind. The same with sensual pleasures, especially sex and a mundane married life. The spiritual hardships show us that enlightenment is won only with hard work and many pains, especially if we are not careful in the path we choose. Coming to sit at the Bodhi tree is like that personal sense of responsibility for the enlightenment of all beings, and the decision to work to the death if necessary to achieve enlightenment. Defeating the demons is a statement upon who our real enemies are: our own mental afflictions; death itself; any state of mind or body short of an enlightened Angel's; and anything that would hold us back from our task. Reaching the state of enlightenment is a statement that it is possible to be of ultimate benefit to others; and the fact that even Lord Buddha passed from this world is a reminder of how fragile we ourselves are—and also a reminder that many of the things we see around us may not be at all what they seem to be.]

\*12) When Lord Buddha came out of his holy mother's womb, he took seven steps in each of the six directions of space. Lotuses appeared below his feet with each step, and he made a high proclamation in each direction. Give the famous line that He spoke as he stepped to the west. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

["I am the highest being to walk on this planet."]

Debate assignment: Remember to review this class at least once before the review class, by sitting down with a friend over a cup of coffee or tea and simply discussing what was said.

Meditation assignment: Sit down for 15 minutes a day, and do a review meditation on the series of twelve deeds, and how each one is a message to us.



#### The Asian Classics Institute



## Diamond Mountain University

#### Uttara Tantra of Maitreya Sanskrit Class 1

1. The full name of the root text we are studying, Lord Maitreya's fifth book, is:

## महायानोत्तरतन्त्रशास्त्र

mahāyānottara tantra śāstra Commentary on the Latter Part of the Series, in the Greater Way

2. The name of the commentary written by Arya Asanga is:

#### उत्तरतन्त्रव्याख्या

uttara tantra vyākhyā Detailed Explanation on the "Latter Part of the Series"

3. Arya Asanga's name is:

## आर्य असंग

ārya asanga

4. The first of Maitreya's five books is called:

#### धर्मधर्मताविभंग

dharma dharmatā vibhanga Distinguishing Between Things and the Essence of Things

5. The second of Maitreya's five books is called:

#### मध्यान्तविभंग

madhyānta vibhanga Distinguishing Between the Middle and the Extremes 6. The third of Maitreya's five books is called:

## महायानसूत्रालंकार

mahāyāna sūtrālaṃkāra Ornament of the Collection of Sutras of the Greater Way

7. The fourth of Maitreya's five books is called:

## अभिसमयालंकार

abhisamayālamkāra Ornament of Realizations



#### The Asian Classics Institute



## Diamond Mountain University

#### Uttara Tantra of Maitreya Sanskrit Class 2

1. In the opening lines of the Uttara Tantra in Tibetan, the author bows down to the Buddhas and bodhisattvas. In the opening lines of the Sanskrit, it reads:

#### ओं नमः श्रीवज्रसत्त्वाय।

Om namah śri vajrasattvāya

Om! I bow down to the glorious Keeper of the Diamond.

2. The text then describes:

#### वज्रोपमस्याधिगमार्थसप्त ।

vajropamasyādhigamārtha sapta The Seven Diamond-Like Objects of Realization

The second is: The third is: 3. The first vision is: The fourth is: धर्म बुद्ध गण धतु buddha dharma gaṇa dhātu The fifth is: The sixth is: The seventh is: बौद्धकर्म बोधि गुण bodhi bauddha karma guṇa

4. The ultimate Buddha is the: The apparent Buddha is the:

धमेकाय रूपकाय dharmakāya rūpakāya





### Diamond Mountain University

#### Uttara Tantra of Maitreya Sanskrit Classes 3 and 4

1. The first of the three qualities that an ideal student for the Latter Part of the Series needs to have is the need to reach enlightenment. And in order to feel this, first we must acquire:

#### करुण

karuna great compassion

2. The Sanskrit word for the Three Jewels is:

### त्रिरत

tri ratna

3. Lord Maitreya encouraged the Tibetans to translate Jewel as konchok—"rare supreme one" by describing the Three Jewels as "rare" and "supreme" in six different ways.

> The first is: The second is:

दुर्लभोत्पाद निर्मल

durlabhotpāda nirmala difficult to come across immaculate

The third is: The fourth is:

लोकालंकार प्रभावत्

prabhāvat lokālamkāra

possessed of power jewel ornament for the world The fifth is:

अग्रत

agrata
supreme

The sixth is:

nirvikāra
unwavering

4. In the *Commentary on the Latter Part*, the Buddha Jewel is said to possess six great qualities. Three of these relate to achieving ones own ultimate goals, which involve the truth body, or dharmakaya. The dharmakaya can be divided into the "realm of the real" and the "knowing." The "realm of the real" further includes two parts, the first of which is natural purity, or ultimate reality. As such it is:

### असंस्कृत

asaņskṛta unproduced

5. The second part of the "realm of the real" is achieved purity, wherein all conscious effort is ended in the service of others. It is known as:

### अनाभोग

anābhoga spontaneous

6. The third is the wisdom which perceives how things are, which is a direct, non-discursive knowing that:

## अपरप्रत्ययोदित

aparapratyayodita does not realize things due to another

7. There are three qualities that relate to others' goals.

The first is: The second is: The third is:

ज्ञान कारुण्य शक्ति

jñāna kāruṇya śakti
knowledge love power

8. The first of the four arya truths is:

#### दुःख

duḥkha suffering

And for this, Lord Maitreya uses the metaphor of:

## व्याधिर्ज्ञेय

vyādhirjñeya realization of our own sickness

The second arya truth is:

### प्रहेय

praheya the root cause

And for this, Lord Maitreya uses the metaphor of ridding ourselves of:

## व्याधिहेतु

vyādhihetu the cause of the sickness

The third arya truth is:

#### प्राप्य

prāpya to be achieved (cessation)

And for this, Lord Maitreya uses the metaphor of getting:

#### स्वास्थ्य

svāsthya health The fourth arya truth is:

## सेव्य

sevya putting into practice (the path)

And for this, Lord Maitreya uses the metaphor of taking our:

# भेषज

bheṣaja medicine





### Diamond Mountain University

#### **Uttara Tantra of Maitreya** Sanskrit Class 5

1. One of the most well-known verses from the *Commentary on the Latter Part* states:

# मृत्युव्याधिजरादुःखमूलम् आर्थेर् अपोद्धतम् ।

mṛtyu vyādhi jarāduḥkha mūlam āryair apoddhṛtam

## कर्मक्केशवसाज्जातिस् तदु अभावान! न तेषु तत् ॥

karma kleshvasājjātis tad abhāvān na teşu tat

Realized beings have ripped out death And sickness and aging from the root; Birth comes by the power of deeds And mental afflictions— They have none, and so have none.

2. The texts discussed a person who is the truth of suffering but at the same time does not possess the so-called "demon of the heaps":

#### स्कन्धमार:

skandha mārah

This type of person is one who has seen emptiness directly, and is known as a "seventimer," one who only has to take seven more births before reaching enlightenment:

### सप्त कृदु भव

sapta krd bhava

3. Then there is the type of person who can possess an impurity involved with mental afflictions but doesn't possess the truth of suffering:

### आर्य बोधिसत्त्व

ārya bodhisattva

1. Je Tsongkapa talks about the necessity for seeing emptiness directly in order to attain the "illusory body":

#### मायाकाय

māyākāya

5. There is one even more powerful than a bodhisattva arya; that is a bodhisattva arya who is practicing the secret teachings. This was mentioned in Je Tsongkapa's secret text called the "Secret Collection," or:

### गुह्य समाज तन्त्र

guhya samāja tantra

6. Bodhisattva aryas still have leftover seeds which temporarily still bind them to this "cycle of pain":

#### संसार

saṃsāra





## Diamond Mountain University

Uttara Tantra of Maitreya Sanskrit Track Classes 6 and 7

1. In the sixth class, we discussed nine images for the concealed Buddha within us. Here are the nine:

(In this analogy, the lotus refers to latent desire: लोभ बुद्धः कुपद्मे

buddhah kupadme lobha) Buddha within a lotus

मधु मक्षिकासु (In this analogy, the bee refers to latent aversion:

madhu maksikāsu dvesa) the honey from the bee

तुषेसु साराणि (In this analogy, the husk refers to latent ignorance: मोह

tusesu sārāni moha)

the essence within the husk

## अशुचो सुवर्ण

aśucau suvarna gold within a cesspool

निधिः क्षितौ

nidhih ksitau treasure beneath the floor

## अल्पफले ऽण्कुरादि

alpaphale 'nkurādi sprout within the fruit

## प्रक्लिन्नवस्त्रेषु जिनात्म

praklinna vastresu jinātma Buddha statue covered in a ragged cloth

## जघन्यनारीजठरे नृपत्व

(A world emporer is also known as a: चक्रवतिन्

jaghanya nārījaṭhare nṛpatva world emporer in the womb of a baglady cakravartin)

### मृत्सु रत्नबिम्ब

mṛtsu ratnabimba priceless statue encased in clay

2. In class seven, we discussed six different words for Buddha nature. Here are the six:

तथागत गर्भ

सुगत गर्भ

tathāgata garbha

sugata garbha

essence of the Ones Gone Thus

essence of the Ones Gone to Bliss

तथागत हृद्य

गोत्र

tathāgata hṛdaya heart of the Ones Gone Thus gotra family seed

धातु

बुद्धवंष

dhātu

buddha vamsa

Buddha-part

Buddha-genus

3. We also discussed the difference between the Buddha nature which is cultivatable, and the Buddha nature which is innate:

## प्रकृतिस्थ गोत्र

prakrtistha gotra innate Buddha-nature





## Diamond Mountain University

Uttara Tantra of Maitreya Sanskrit Track Classes 8 and 9

1. In class eight, we explored the definition of Buddha nature by the four different schools:

Higher Knowledge or Detailists: अभिधर्म or वैभाषिक

abhidharma vaibhāşika

Sutrists: सौत्रान्तिक

sautrāntika

Mind-Only: चित्तमात्र

cittamātra

Middle-Way Consequence: माध्यमिक प्रासिङ्गक

mādhyamika prāsangika

2. In the Abhidharma, Buddha nature of a realized being, or Arya, is explained as:

### अल्पेच्छ संतोष आर्य वंष

alpeccha santosa ārya vamsa

The family line of realized beings are content with what they have, and have few wants.

3. The Mind-Only school describes Buddha nature as:

### अनास्रव चित्तबीज

anāsrava cittabīja

An undefiled seed in the mind

1. The shentong philosophy professes a view which encompasses the idea of the same three characteristics found in the Mind-Only school:

kuntak: परिकल्पित shenwang: परतन्त्र yongdrup: परिनिष्पन्न parikalpita paratantra parinispanna

1. In class nine, we explored how the three different ways are described in the Uttara Tantra as all leading in the end to one. The three ways are:

The way of the listeners: श्रावक यान

shrāvaka yāna

The way of the self-made buddhas: प्रत्येक बुद्ध यान

pratyeka buddha yāna

The way of the bodhisattvas: महायान

mahāyāna

6. Pratyeka buddhas are so-called because they utilize perceptions of emptiness which are:

#### प्रत्यक्ष प्रमाण

pratyakşa pramāṇa direct valid perception

7. According to the Independent Middle-Way school, there are different types of emptiness perceived by the three different ways. These are called:

पुद्गलनेरात्म्य

धर्मनैरात्म्य

pudgalanairātmya The lack of self-existence to a person dharmanairātmya
The lack of self-existence to things





## Diamond Mountain University

Uttara Tantra of Maitreya Sanskrit Track Class 10

1. In Chapter 10, the text begins by describing how Lord Buddha undertakes these twelve deeds:

# महाकरुणया कृत्स्नं लोकम् आलोक्य लोकवित् ।

mahākaruņayā kṛtsnam lokam ālokya lokavit

## धर्मकायादु अविरलं निर्माणेश्चित्ररूपिभिः॥

dharmakāyād aviralam nirmānaiś citrārūpibhih

Seeing and understanding the entire suffering world He is filled with compassion, and so Without straying from the state of pure emptiness He takes on various different forms of emanations.

2. Because we are beings who have a good intellect and are capable of renunciation, Lord Buddha decided to come to our world, the continent known as:

## जम्बुद्वीप

Jambudvīpa (Dzambuling) The Island of Jambu Trees

3. In order to attain full enlightenment, Lord Buddha went to meditate at:

#### वज्रासन

Vajrāsana (Dorje Den) The Seat of the Diamond 4. Because everyone got their heart's desire on the day of Lord Buddha's birth, and because Lord Buddha reached the final goal, we call Him:

### सिद्धार्थ

Siddhārtha

5. Because He was born into a clan of busy-minded people, they called Him:

## शाक्यमुनि

Śākyamuni

6. According to the Tantric view, Lord Buddha appears in His enlightened enjoyment body as Vajradhara and various other forms to give the secret teachings, in:

### अकानिष्ठ

Akanistha (Okmin) Heaven Below None